1301:7-7-12

ENERGY SYSTEMS (2024 IFC)

SECTION 1201
GENERAL

1201.1 Scope. The provisions of this chapter shall apply to the installation, operation, maintenance, repair, retrofitting, testing, commissioning and decommissioning of energy systems used for generating or storing energy including but not limited to energy storage systems under the exclusive control of an electric utility or lawfully designated agency. It shall not apply to equipment associated with the generation, control, transformation, transmission, or distribution of energy installations that is under the exclusive control of an electric utility or lawfully designated agency. Energy storage systems regulated by Section 1207 shall comply with this chapter, as appropriate, and NFPA 855.

1201.2 Electrical wiring and equipment. Electrical wiring and equipment used in connection with energy systems shall be installed and maintained in accordance with this chapter, Section 603 and NFPA 70.

1201.3 Mixed system installation. Where mixed systems are approved, the aggregate nameplate kWh energy of all energy storage systems in a fire area shall not exceed the maximum quantity specified for any of the energy systems in this chapter. Where required by the fire code official, a hazard mitigation analysis shall be provided and approved in accordance with Section *104.8.2* to evaluate any potential adverse interaction between the various energy systems and technologies.

SECTION 1202
DEFINITIONS

1202.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

BATTERY SYSTEM, STATIONARY STORAGE.

BATTERY TYPES.

CAPACITOR ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM.

CRITICAL CIRCUIT.

EMERGENCY POWER SYSTEM.

ENERGY STORAGE MANAGEMENT SYSTEMS.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM (ESS).

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM, ELECTROCHEMICAL.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM, MOBILE.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM, WALK-IN UNIT.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM CABINET.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM COMMISSIONING.

ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM DECOMMISSIONING.

FUEL CELL POWER SYSTEM, STATIONARY.

PORTABLE GENERATOR.

STANDBY POWER SYSTEM.

SECTION 1203
EMERGENCY AND STANDBY POWER SYSTEMS

1203.1 General. Emergency power systems and standby power systems required by this code or the *building code* shall comply with Sections 1203.1.1 through 1203.1.9.

1203.1.1 Stationary generators. Stationary emergency and standby power generators required by this code shall be listed in accordance with UL 2200.

1203.1.2 Fuel line piping protection. Fuel lines supplying a generator set inside a high-rise building shall be separated from areas of the building other than the room the generator is located in by one of the following methods:

1. A fire-resistant pipe-protection system that has been tested in accordance with UL 1489. The system shall be installed as tested and in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, and shall have a rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the required rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.
2. An assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours. Where the building is protected throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1, the required fire-resistance rating shall be reduced to 1 hour.
3. Other approved methods.

1203.1.3 Installation. Emergency power systems and standby power systems shall be installed in accordance with the *building code*, NFPA 70, NFPA 110 and NFPA 111.

1203.1.4 Load transfer. Emergency power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 10 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code. Standby power systems shall automatically provide secondary power within 60 seconds after primary power is lost, unless specified otherwise in this code.

1203.1.5 Load duration. Emergency power systems and standby power systems shall be designed to provide the required power for a minimum duration of 2 hours without being refueled or recharged, unless specified otherwise in this code.

1203.1.6 Uninterruptable power source. An uninterrupted source of power shall be provided for equipment where required by the manufacturer's instructions, the listing, this code or applicable referenced standards.

1203.1.7 Interchangeability. Emergency power systems shall be an acceptable alternative for installations that require standby power systems.

1203.1.8 Group I-2 occupancies. In Group I-2 occupancies located in flood hazard areas established in Section 1612.3 of the *building code* where new essential electrical systems are

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

installed, and where new essential electrical system generators are installed, the systems and generators shall be located and installed in accordance with ASCE 24. Where connections for hook up of temporary generators are provided, the connections shall be located at or above the elevation required in ASCE 24.

1203.1.9 Maintenance. Existing installations shall be maintained in accordance with the original approval and Section 1203.4.

1203.2 Where required. Emergency and standby power systems shall be provided where required by Sections 1203.2.1 through 1203.2.19.

1203.2.1 Ambulatory care facilities. Essential electrical systems for ambulatory care facilities shall be in accordance with Section 422.6 of the *building code*.

1203.2.2 Elevators and platform lifts. Standby power shall be provided for elevators and platform lifts as required in Sections 604.3, 1009.4.1 and 1009.5.

1203.2.3 Emergency responder communication coverage systems. Standby power shall be provided for in-building, two-way emergency responder communication coverage systems as required in Section 510.4.2.3. The standby power supply shall be capable of operating the in-building, two-way emergency responder communication coverage system at 100-percent system operation capacity for a duration of not less than 12 hours.

1203.2.4 Emergency voice/alarm communication systems. Standby power shall be provided for emergency voice/alarm communication systems in accordance with NFPA 72.

1203.2.5 Exhaust ventilation. Standby power shall be provided for mechanical exhaust ventilation systems as required in Section 1207.6.1.2.1. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 2 hours.

1203.2.6 Exit signs. Emergency power shall be provided for exit signs as required in Section 1013.6.3. The system shall be capable of powering the required load for a duration of not less than 90 minutes.

1203.2.7 Gas detection systems. Emergency power shall be provided for gas detection systems where required by Sections 1203.2.10 and 1203.2.17. Standby power shall be provided for gas detection systems where required by Sections 916.5 and 1207.6.1.2.4.

1203.2.8 Group I-2 occupancies. Essential electrical systems for Group I-2 occupancies shall be in accordance with Section 407.11 of the *building code*.

1203.2.9 Group I-3 occupancies. Power-operated sliding doors or power-operated locks for swinging doors in Group I-3 occupancies shall be operable by a manual release mechanism at the door. Emergency power shall be provided for the doors and locks.

Exceptions:

1. Emergency power is not required in facilities where provisions for remote locking and unlocking of occupied rooms in Occupancy Condition 4 are not required as set forth in the *building code*.
2. Emergency power is not required where remote mechanical operating releases are provided.

1203.2.10 Hazardous materials. Emergency and standby power shall be provided in occupancies with hazardous materials as required in the following sections:

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1. Sections 5004.7 and 5005.1.5 for hazardous materials.
2. Sections 6004.2.2.8 and 6004.3.4.2 for highly toxic and toxic gases.
3. Section 6204.1.11 for organic peroxides.

1203.2.11 High-rise buildings. Standby power and emergency power shall be provided for high-rise buildings as required in Section 403 of the *building code*, and shall be in accordance with Section 1203.

1203.2.12 Special purpose horizontal sliding doors. Standby power shall be provided for horizontal sliding doors as required in Section 1010.3.3. The standby power supply shall have a capacity to operate not fewer than 50 closing cycles of the door.

1203.2.13 Hydrogen fuel gas rooms. Standby power shall be provided for hydrogen fuel gas rooms as required by Section 5808.7.

1203.2.14 Laboratory suites. Standby or emergency power shall be provided in accordance with Section 5004.7 where laboratory suites are located above the sixth story above grade plane or located in a story below grade plane.

1203.2.15 Means of egress illumination. Emergency power shall be provided for means of egress illumination in accordance with Sections *1008.3* and 1104.5.1.

1203.2.16 Membrane structures. Standby power shall be provided for auxiliary inflation systems in permanent membrane structures in accordance with Section 2702 of the *building code*. Auxiliary inflation systems shall be provided in temporary air-supported and air-inflated membrane structures in accordance with Section *3103.10.4*.

1203.2.17 Semiconductor fabrication facilities. Emergency power shall be provided for semiconductor fabrication facilities as required in Section 2703.15.

1203.2.18 Smoke control systems. Standby power shall be provided for smoke control systems as required in Section 909.11.

1203.2.19 Underground buildings. Emergency and standby power shall be provided in underground buildings as required in Section 405 of the *building code* and shall be in accordance with Section 1203.

1203.3 Critical circuits. Required critical circuits shall be protected using one of the following methods:

1. Cables used for survivability of required critical circuits shall be listed in accordance with UL 2196 and shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.
2. Electrical circuit protective systems shall have a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour. Electrical circuit protective systems shall be installed in accordance with their listing requirements.
3. Construction having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour.

1203.4 Maintenance. Emergency and standby power systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 110 and NFPA 111 such that the system is capable of supplying service within the time specified for the type and duration required.

1203.4.1 Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities. In Group I-2 occupancies and ambulatory care facilities, emergency and standby power systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 99.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1203.4.2 Schedule. Inspection, testing and maintenance of emergency and standby power systems shall be in accordance with an approved schedule established upon completion and approval of the system installation.

1203.4.3 Records. Records of the inspection, testing and maintenance of emergency and standby power systems shall include the date of service, name of the servicing technician, a summary of conditions noted and a detailed description of any conditions requiring correction and what corrective action was taken. Such records shall be maintained.

1203.4.4 Switch maintenance. Emergency and standby power system transfer switches shall be included in the inspection, testing and maintenance schedule required by Section 1203.4.2. Transfer switches shall be maintained free from accumulated dust and dirt. Inspection shall include examination of the transfer switch contacts for evidence of deterioration. When evidence of contact deterioration is detected, the contacts shall be replaced in accordance with the transfer switch manufacturer's instructions.

1203.5 Operational inspection and testing. Emergency power systems, including all appurtenant components, shall be inspected and tested under load in accordance with NFPA 110 and NFPA 111.

Exception: Where the emergency power system is used for standby power or peak load shaving, such use shall be recorded and shall be allowed to be substituted for scheduled testing of the generator set, provided that appropriate records are maintained.

1203.5.1 Group I-2 and ambulatory care facilities. In Group I-2 occupancies and ambulatory care facilities, emergency and standby power systems shall be inspected and tested under load in accordance with NFPA 99.

1203.5.2 Transfer switch test. The test of the transfer switch shall consist of electrically operating the transfer switch from the normal position to the alternate position and then return to the normal position.

SECTION 1204
PORTABLE GENERATORS

1204.1 Portable generators. The use, operation and maintenance of portable generators shall comply with this section.

1204.2 Listing. Portable generators manufactured after January 1, 2021, shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 2201.

1204.3 Operation and maintenance. Portable generators shall be operated and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

1204.4 Grounding. Portable generators shall be grounded in accordance with NFPA 70.

1204.5 Operating locations. Portable generators shall be operated only outdoors a minimum of 5 feet (1524 mm) from any building openings such as windows and doors or air intakes. Portable generators shall not be operated within buildings or enclosed areas. Additional separation shall be provided for tents, membrane structures and outdoor assembly events as specified in Chapter 31.

1204.6 Cords and wiring. Extension cords and temporary wiring used to connect portable generators shall be in accordance with Section 603 and shall be provided with GFCI protection.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1204.7 Connections to premise wiring. Connections to a premise wiring system shall comply with all of the following:

1. Power shall not be provided in a manner that “back-feeds” receptacles or the premise wiring system.
2. Connection to a premise served by commercial power shall be made through a listed transfer switch installed, used and maintained in accordance with NFPA 70.
3. Connection to buildings not served by commercial power shall comply with NFPA 70.

1204.8 Refueling. Portable generators shall not be refueled while operating.

1204.9 Storage and repair. Storage and repair of fuel-fired portable generators shall comply with Section 313.

1204.10 Fire extinguisher. A listed portable fire extinguisher complying with Section 906 with a minimum rating of 2-A:20-B:C shall be provided not more than 50 feet (15 240 mm) from the portable generator.

SECTION 1205
SOLAR PHOTOVOLTAIC POWER SYSTEMS

1205.1 General. Solar photovoltaic (PV) systems shall be installed in accordance with the *building code* or *residential code*. The electrical portion of solar PV systems shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70. Rooftop-mounted solar photovoltaic systems shall be installed in accordance with Sections *1205.1.1* through 1205.4.3. Ground-mounted solar photovoltaic systems shall comply with Section 1205.5.

1205.1.1 Identification of existing structures with solar photovoltaic power systems. *Structures and premises equipped with photovoltaic power systems shall be provided with approved signage in an approved location which reads “Warning Dual Power Supply Sources Utility Grid and PV Power Source Electric System” which will be in white letters on a red background. Each letter shall be a minimum of 3 inches and a minimum of ½ inch stroke width.*

1205.1.1.1 Maintenance of Required Signage and Markings. *All signage and markings required by this section and NFPA 70 shall be maintained.*

1205.2 Access and pathways. Roof access, pathways and spacing requirements shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1205.2.1 through 1205.3.3. Pathways shall be over areas capable of supporting fire fighters accessing the roof. Pathways shall be located in areas with minimal obstructions, such as vent pipes, conduit or mechanical equipment.

Exceptions:

1. Detached, nonhabitable Group U structures including, but not limited to, detached garages serving Group R-3 buildings, parking shade structures, carports, solar trellises and similar structures.
2. Roof access, pathways and spacing requirements need not be provided where the fire code official has determined that rooftop operations will not be employed.
3. Building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) systems where the BIPV systems are approved, integrated into the finished roof surface and are listed in accordance with UL 3741. The removal or cutting away of portions of the BIPV system during fire-fighting operations shall not expose a fire fighter to electrical shock hazards.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Roof access points shall be approved by the fire code official.

1205.2.1 Solar photovoltaic (PV) systems for Group R-3 buildings. Solar photovoltaic (PV) systems for Group R-3 buildings shall comply with Sections 1205.2.1.1 through 1205.2.3.

Exceptions:

1. These requirements shall not apply to structures designed and constructed in accordance with the *residential code*.
2. These requirements shall not apply to roofs with slopes of 2 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (16.7-percent slope) or less.

1205.2.1.1 Pathways to ridge. Not fewer than two 36-inch-wide (914 mm) pathways on separate roof planes, from lowest roof edge to ridge, shall be provided on all buildings. Not fewer than one pathway shall be provided on the street or driveway side of the roof. For each roof plane with a photovoltaic array, not fewer than one 36-inch-wide (914 mm) pathway from lowest roof edge to ridge shall be provided on the same roof plane as the photovoltaic array, on an adjacent roof plane or straddling the same and adjacent roof planes.

1205.2.1.2 Setbacks at ridge. For photovoltaic arrays occupying 33 percent or less of the plan view total roof area, a setback of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) wide is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge. For photovoltaic arrays occupying more than 33 percent of the plan view total roof area, a setback of not less than 36 inches (457 mm) wide is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge.

1205.2.1.3 Alternative setbacks at ridge. Where an automatic sprinkler system is installed within the dwelling in accordance with Section 903.3.1.3, setbacks at the ridge shall conform to one of the following:

1. For photovoltaic arrays occupying 66 percent or less of the plan view total roof area, a setback of not less than 18 inches (457 mm) wide is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge.
2. For photovoltaic arrays occupying more than 66 percent of the plan view total roof area, a setback of not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide is required on both sides of a horizontal ridge.

1205.2.2 Emergency escape and rescue openings. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings shall not be placed on the portion of a roof that is below an emergency escape and rescue opening. A pathway of not less than 36 inches (914 mm) wide shall be provided to the emergency escape and rescue opening.

1205.2.3 Building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) systems. Where building-integrated photovoltaic (BIPV) systems are installed in a manner that creates areas with electrical hazards to be hidden from view, markings shall be provided to identify the hazardous areas to avoid for ladder placement. The markings shall be reflective and be visible from grade beneath the eaves or other location approved by the fire code official.

Exception: BIPV systems listed in accordance with UL 3741, where the removal or cutting away of portions of the BIPV system during fire-fighting operations have been determined to not expose a fire fighter to electrical shock hazards.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1205.3 Other than Group R-3 buildings. Access to systems for buildings, other than those containing Group R-3 occupancies, shall be provided in accordance with Sections 1205.3.1 through 1205.3.3.

Exception: Where it is determined by the fire code official that the roof configuration is similar to that of a Group R-3 occupancy, the residential access and ventilation requirements in Sections 1205.2.1.1 through 1205.2.1.3 are a suitable alternative.

1205.3.1 Perimeter pathways. There shall be a minimum 6-foot-wide (1829 mm) clear perimeter around the edges of the roof.

Exception: Where either axis of the building is 250 feet (76 200 mm) or less, the clear perimeter around the edges of the roof shall be permitted to be reduced to a minimum width of 4 feet (1219 mm).

1205.3.2 Interior pathways. Interior pathways shall be provided between array sections to meet the following requirements:

1. Pathways shall be provided at intervals not greater than 150 feet (45 720 mm) throughout the length and width of the roof.
2. A pathway not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) wide in a straight line to roof standpipes or ventilation hatches.
3. A pathway not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) wide around roof access hatches, with not fewer than one such pathway to a parapet or roof edge.

1205.3.3 Smoke ventilation. The solar installation shall be designed to meet the following requirements:

1. Where nongravity-operated smoke and heat vents occur, a pathway not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) wide shall be provided bordering all sides.
2. Where gravity-operated dropout smoke and heat vents occur, a pathway not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) wide on not fewer than one side.
3. Smoke ventilation options between array sections shall be one of the following:
   3.1. A pathway not less than 8 feet (2438 mm) wide.
   3.2. A pathway not less than 4 feet (1219 mm) wide bordering 4-foot by 8-foot (1219 mm by 2438 mm) venting cutouts every 20 feet (6096 mm) on alternating sides of the pathway.

1205.4 Buildings with rapid shutdown. Buildings with rapid shutdown solar photovoltaic systems shall have permanent labels in accordance with Sections 1205.4.1 through 1205.4.3.

1205.4.1 Rapid shutdown type. The type of solar photovoltaic system rapid shutdown shall be labeled with one of the following:

1. For solar photovoltaic systems that shut down the array and the conductors leaving the array, a label shall be provided. The first two lines of the label shall be uppercase characters with a minimum height of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (10 mm) in black on a yellow background. The remaining characters shall be uppercase with a minimum height of $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) in black on a white background. The label shall be in accordance with Figure 1205.4.1(1) and state the following:

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

SOLAR PV SYSTEM EQUIPPED WITH
RAPID SHUTDOWN. TURN RAPID
SHUTDOWN SWITCH TO THE "OFF"
POSITION TO SHUT DOWN PV SYSTEM
AND REDUCE SHOCK HAZARD IN ARRAY.

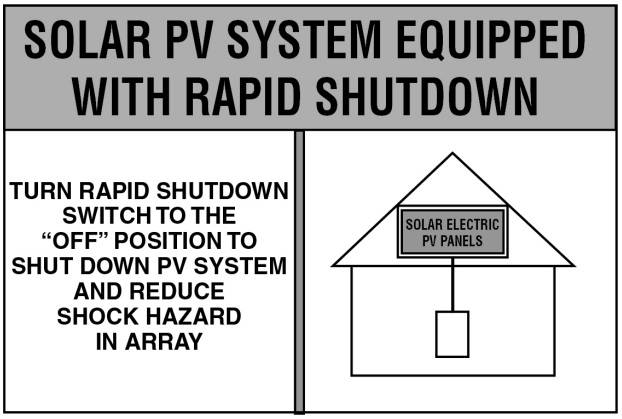


FIGURE 1205.4.1(1)
LABEL FOR SOLAR PV SYSTEMS THAT REDUCE SHOCK HAZARD WITHIN ARRAY AND SHUT DOWN CONDUCTORS LEAVING ARRAY

2. For photovoltaic systems that only shut down conductors leaving the array, a label shall be provided. The first two lines of the label shall be uppercase characters with a minimum height of $^{3}/_{8}$ inch (10 mm) in white on a red background and the remaining characters shall be capitalized with a minimum height of $^{3}/_{16}$ inch (5 mm) in black on a white background. The label shall be in accordance with Figure 1205.4.1(2) and state the following:

THIS SOLAR PV SYSTEM EQUIPPED
WITH RAPID SHUTDOWN. TURN RAPID
SHUTDOWN SWITCH TO THE "OFF"
POSITION TO SHUT DOWN CONDUCTORS
OUTSIDE THE ARRAY. CONDUCTORS
WITHIN ARRAY REMAIN ENERGIZED
IN SUNLIGHT.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

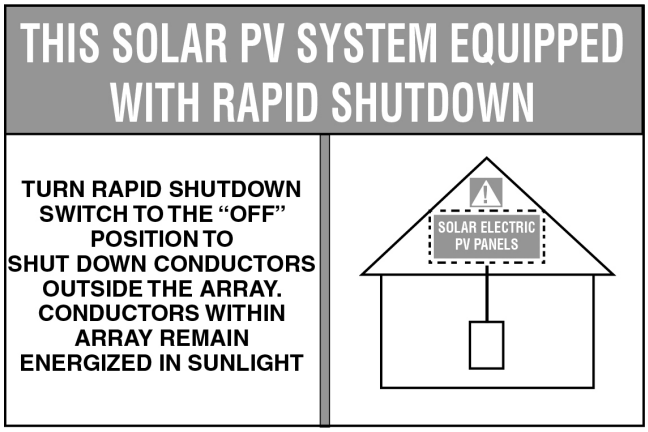


FIGURE 1205.4.1(2)
LABEL FOR SOLAR PV SYSTEMS THAT ONLY SHUT DOWN CONDUCTORS LEAVING THE ARRAY

1205.4.1.1 Diagram. The labels in Section 1205.4.1 shall include a simple diagram of a building with a roof. Diagram sections in red signify sections of the solar photovoltaic system that are not shut down when the rapid shutdown switch is turned off.

1205.4.1.2 Location. The rapid shutdown label in Section 1205.4.1 shall be located not greater than 3 feet (914 mm) from the service disconnecting means to which the photovoltaic systems are connected, and shall indicate the location of all identified rapid shutdown switches if not at the same location.

1205.4.2 Buildings with more than one rapid shutdown type. Solar photovoltaic systems that contain rapid shutdown in accordance with both Items 1 and 2 of Section 1205.4.1 or solar photovoltaic systems where only portions of the systems on the building contain rapid shutdown, shall provide a detailed plan view diagram of the roof showing each different photovoltaic system and a dotted line around areas that remain energized after the rapid shutdown switch is operated.

1205.4.3 Rapid shutdown switch. A rapid shutdown switch shall have a label located not greater than 3 feet (914 mm) from the switch that states the following:

RAPID SHUTDOWN SWITCH
FOR SOLAR PV SYSTEM

1205.5 Ground-mounted photovoltaic panel systems. Ground-mounted photovoltaic panel systems shall be installed in accordance with this section. Setback requirements shall not apply to ground-mounted, free-standing photovoltaic arrays.

1205.5.1 Vegetation control. A clear, brush-free area of 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be required around the perimeter of the ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays. A maintained vegetative surface or a noncombustible base, approved by the fire code official, shall be installed and maintained under the photovoltaic arrays and associated electrical equipment installations.

SECTION 1206
STATIONARY FUEL CELL POWER SYSTEMS

1206.1 General. Stationary fuel cell power systems in new and existing occupancies shall comply with this section.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Exception: The temporary use of a fuel cell-powered electric vehicle to power a Group R-3 or R-4 building while parked shall comply with Section 1206.13.

1206.2 Permits. Permits shall be obtained for stationary fuel cell power systems as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

1206.3 Equipment. Stationary fuel cell power systems shall comply with the following:

1. Prepackaged fuel cell power systems shall be listed and labeled in accordance with CSA FC 1.
2. The modules and components in a preengineered fuel cell power system shall be listed and labeled in accordance with CSA FC 1 and interconnected to complete the assembly of the system at the job site in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the module and component listings.
3. Field-fabricated fuel cell power systems shall be approved based on a review of the technical report provided in accordance with Section *104.8.2*. The report shall be prepared by and bear the stamp of a registered design professional and shall include:

3.1. A fire risk evaluation.

3.2. An evaluation demonstrating that modules and components in the fuel cell power system comply with applicable requirements in CSA FC 1.

3.3. Documentation of the fuel cell power system's compliance with applicable NFPA 2 and NFPA 853 construction requirements.

1206.4 Installation. Stationary fuel cell power systems shall be installed and maintained in accordance with NFPA 70 and NFPA 853, the manufacturer's installation instructions, and the listing. Stationary fuel cell power systems fueled by hydrogen shall be installed and maintained in accordance with NFPA 2 and NFPA 70, the manufacturer's installation instructions and the listing.

1206.5 Residential use. Stationary fuel cell power systems shall not be installed in Group R-3 and R-4 buildings, or dwelling units associated with Group R-2 buildings unless they are specifically listed for residential use.

Exception: The temporary use of a fuel cell-powered electric vehicle to power a Group R-3 or R-4 building while parked shall comply with Section 1206.13.

1206.6 Indoor installations. Stationary fuel cell power systems installed in indoor locations shall comply with Sections 1206.6 through 1206.6.2. For purposes of this section, an indoor location includes a roof and 50 percent or greater enclosing walls.

1206.6.1 Listed. Stationary fuel cell power systems installed indoors shall be specifically listed and labeled for indoor use.

1206.6.2 Separation. Rooms containing stationary fuel cell power systems shall be separated from the following occupancies by fire barriers or horizontal assemblies, or both, constructed in accordance with the *building code*.

1. Group B, F, M, S and U occupancies by 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.
2. Group A, E, I and R occupancies by 2-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

Exception: Stationary fuel cell power systems with an aggregate rating less than 50 kW shall not be required to be separated from other occupancies provided that the systems comply with Section 9.3 of NFPA 853.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1206.6.3 Gas detection systems. Stationary fuel cell power systems shall be provided with a gas detection system. Detection shall be provided in approved locations in the fuel cell power system enclosure, the exhaust system or the room that encloses the fuel cell power system. The system shall be designed to activate at a flammable gas concentration of not more than 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL).

1206.6.3.1 System activation. The activation of the gas detection system shall automatically:

1. Close valves between the gas supply and the fuel cell power system.
2. Shut down the fuel cell power system.
3. Initiate local audible and visible alarms in approved locations.

1206.7 Vehicle impact protection. Where stationary fuel cell power systems are subject to impact by a motor vehicle, vehicle impact protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 312.

1206.8 Outdoor installation. Stationary fuel cell power systems located outdoors shall be separated by not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from the following:

1. Lot lines.
2. Public ways.
3. Buildings.
4. Stored combustible materials.
5. Hazardous materials.
6. High-piled stock.
7. Any portion of a designated means of egress system.
8. Other exposure hazards.

1206.9 Fuel supply. The design, location and installation of the fuel supply for stationary fuel cell power systems shall comply with Chapter 53, Chapter 58 and the International Fuel Gas Code, based on the particular fuel being supplied to the system.

1206.10 Manual shutoff. Access to a manual shutoff valve shall be provided for the fuel piping within 6 feet (1829 mm) of any fuel storage tank serving the fuel cell and within 6 feet (1829 mm) of the power system. If the fuel tank and the stationary fuel cell power system are less than 12 feet (3658 mm) apart, a single shutoff valve shall be permitted. If the stationary fuel cell power system is located indoors, the shutoff valve shall be located outside of the room in which the system is installed, unless otherwise approved by the fire code official.

1206.11 Ventilation and exhaust. Ventilation and exhaust for stationary fuel cell power systems shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 853.

1206.12 Fire protection. Fire protection systems for stationary fuel cell power system installations shall be provided in accordance with NFPA 853.

1206.13 Group R-3 and R-4 fuel cell vehicle energy storage system use. The temporary use of the dwelling unit owner or occupant's fuel cell-powered electric vehicle to power a Group R-3 or R-4 dwelling while parked in an attached or detached garage or outside shall comply with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

SECTION 1207
ELECTRICAL ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEMS (ESS)

1207.1 General. The provisions in this section are applicable to stationary and mobile electrical energy storage systems (ESS).

Exception: ESS in Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies shall only be required to comply with Section 1207.11 except where Section 1207.11.4 requires compliance with Sections 1207.1 through 1207.9.

1207.1.1 Utilities and industrial applications. This section shall not apply to capacitors and capacitor equipment for electric utilities and industrial facilities used in applications such as flexible AC transmission (FACTS) devices, filter capacitor banks, power factor correction, and standalone capacitor banks for voltage correction and stabilization.

1207.1.2 Mobile ESS. Mobile ESS deployed at an electric utility substation or generation facility for 90 days or less shall not add to the threshold values in Table 1207.1.3 for the stationary ESS installation if both of the following conditions apply:

1. The mobile ESS complies with Section 1207.10.
2. The mobile ESS is being used only during periods in which the facility's stationary ESS is being tested, repaired, retrofitted or replaced.

1207.1.3 Scope. ESS having capacities exceeding the values shown in Table 1207.1.3 shall comply with this section.

TABLE 1207.1.3
ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM (ESS) THRESHOLD QUANTITIES

TECHNOLOGY	ENERGY CAPACITY[a]
Capacitor ESS	3 kWh
Flow batteries[b]	20 kWh
Lead-acid batteries, all types	70 kWh[c]
Lithium-ion batteries	20 kWh
Nickel-cadmium (Ni-Cd), nickel metal hydride (Ni-MH) and nickel zinc (Ni-Zn) batteries	70 kWh
Nonelectrochemical ESS[d]	70 kWh
Other battery technologies	10 kWh
Other electrochemical ESS technologies	3 kWh
Sodium nickel chloride batteries	70 kWh
Zinc manganese dioxide batteries (Zn-MnO_2)	70 kWh

For SI: 1 kilowatt hour = 3.6 megajoules.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

a. Energy capacity is the total energy capable of being stored (nameplate rating), not the usable energy rating. For units rated in amp-hours, kWh shall equal rated voltage times amp-hour rating divided by 1,000.
b. Shall include vanadium, zinc-bromine, polysulfide-bromide and other flowing electrolyte-type technologies.
c. Fifty gallons of lead-acid battery electrolyte shall be considered equivalent to 70 kWh.
d. Covers nonelectrochemical technologies such as flywheel and thermal ESS.

1207.1.4 Permits. Permits shall be obtained for ESS as follows:

1. Construction permits shall be obtained for stationary ESS installations and for mobile ESS charging and storage installations covered by Section 1207.10.1. Permits shall be obtained in accordance with *Chapter 1*.
2. Operational permits shall be obtained for stationary ESS installations and for mobile ESS deployment operations covered by Section 1207.10.3. Permits shall be obtained in accordance with *Chapter 1*.

1207.1.4.1 Communication utilities. Operational permits shall not be required for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems at facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities that comply with NFPA 76 and operate at less than 50 voltage alternating current (VAC) and 60 voltage direct current (VDC).

1207.1.5 Construction documents. The following information shall be provided with the permit application:

1. Location and layout diagram of the room or area in which the ESS is to be installed.
2. Details on the hourly fire-resistance ratings of assemblies enclosing the ESS.
3. The quantities and types of ESS to be installed.
4. Manufacturer's specifications, ratings and listings of each ESS.
5. Description of energy (battery) management systems and their operation.
6. Location and content of required signage.
7. Details on fire suppression, smoke or fire detection, thermal management, ventilation, exhaust and deflagration venting systems, if provided.
8. Support arrangement associated with the installation, including any required seismic restraint.
9. A commissioning plan complying with Section 1207.2.1.
10. A decommissioning plan complying with Section 1207.2.3.
11. A fire safety and evacuation plan in accordance with Section 404.

1207.1.5.1 Utilities applicability. Plans and specifications associated with ESS owned and operated by electric utilities as a component of the electric grid that are considered critical infrastructure documents in accordance with the provisions of the North American Electric Reliability Corporation and other applicable governmental laws and regulations shall be made available to the fire code official for viewing *in accordance with Section 104.2*.

1207.1.6 Hazard mitigation analysis. A failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA) or other approved hazard mitigation analysis shall be provided in accordance with Section *104.8.2* under any of the following conditions:

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1. Where ESS technologies not specifically identified in Table 1207.1.3 are provided.
2. More than one ESS technology is provided in a single fire area where there is a potential for adverse interaction between technologies.
3. Where allowed as a basis for increasing maximum allowable quantities. See Section 1207.5.2.\
4. Where required by the fire code official to address a potential hazard with and ESS installation that is not addressed by existing requirements.

1207.1.6.1 Fault condition. The hazard mitigation analysis shall evaluate the consequences of the following failure modes. Only single failure modes shall be considered.

1. A thermal runaway condition in a single electrochemical ESS unit.
2. A mechanical failure of a nonelectrochemical ESS unit.
3. Failure of any battery (energy) management system or fire protection system within the ESS equipment that is not covered by the product listing failure mode effects analysis (FMEA).
4. Failure of any required protection system external to the ESS, including but not limited to ventilation (HCAV), exhaust ventilation, smoke detection, fire detection, gas detection or fire suppression system.

1207.1.6.2 Analysis approval. The fire code official is authorized to approve the hazardous mitigation analysis provided that the consequences of the hazard mitigation analysis demonstrate:

1. Fires will be contained within unoccupied ESS rooms or areas for the minimum duration of the fire-resistance-rated separations identified in Section 1207.7.4.
2. Fires involving the ESS will allow occupants or the general public to evacuate to a safe location.

1207.1.6.3 Additional protection measures. Construction, equipment and systems that are required for the ESS to comply with the hazardous mitigation analysis, including but not limited to those specifically described in Section 1207, shall be installed, maintained and tested in accordance with nationally recognized standards and specified design parameters.

1207.1.7 Large-scale fire test. Where required elsewhere in Section 1207, large-scale fire testing shall be conducted on a representative ESS in accordance with UL 9540A. The testing shall be conducted or witnessed and reported by an approved testing laboratory and show that a fire involving one ESS will not propagate to an adjacent ESS, and where installed within buildings, enclosed areas and walk-in units will be contained within the room, enclosed area or walk-in unit for the duration of the test. The test report shall be provided to the fire code official for review and approval in accordance with Section *104.8.2*.

1207.1.8 Fire remediation. Where a fire or other event has damaged the ESS and ignition or re-ignition of the ESS is possible, the system owner, agent or lessee shall take the following actions, at their expense, to mitigate the hazard or remove damaged equipment from the premises to a safe location.

1207.1.8.1 Fire mitigation personnel. Where, in the opinion of the fire code official, it is essential for public safety that trained personnel be on-site to respond to possible ignition or re-ignition of a damaged ESS, the system owner, agent or lessee shall dispatch within

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

15 minutes one or more fire mitigation personnel to the premise, as required and approved, at their expense. These personnel shall remain on duty continuously after the fire department leaves the premise until the damaged energy storage equipment is removed from the premises, or earlier if the fire code official indicates the public safety hazard has been abated.

1207.1.8.2 Duties. On-duty fire mitigation personnel shall have the following responsibilities:

1. Keep a diligent watch for fires, obstructions to means of egress and other hazards.
2. Immediately contact the fire department if their assistance is needed to mitigate any hazards or extinguish fires.
3. Take prompt measures for remediation of hazards in accordance with the decommissioning plan per Section 1207.2.3.
4. Take prompt measures to assist in the evacuation of the public from the structures.

1207.2 Commissioning, decommissioning, operation and maintenance. Commissioning, decommissioning, operation and maintenance shall be conducted in accordance with this section.

1207.2.1 Commissioning. Commissioning of newly installed ESS and existing ESS that have been retrofitted, replaced or previously decommissioned and are returning to service shall be conducted prior to the ESS being placed in service in accordance with a commissioning plan that has been approved prior to initiating commissioning. The commissioning plan shall include the following:

1. A narrative description of the activities that will be accomplished during each phase of commissioning, including the personnel intended to accomplish each of the activities.
2. A listing of the specific ESS and associated components, controls and safety-related devices to be tested, a description of the tests to be performed and the functions to be tested.
3. Conditions under which all testing will be performed, which are representative of the conditions during normal operation of the system.
4. Documentation of the owner's project requirements and the basis of design necessary to understand the installation and operation of the ESS.
5. Verification that required equipment and systems are installed in accordance with the approved plans and specifications.
6. Integrated testing for all fire and safety systems.
7. Testing for any required thermal management, ventilation or exhaust systems associated with the ESS installation.
8. Preparation and delivery of operation and maintenance documentation.
9. Training of facility operating and maintenance staff.
10. Identification and documentation of the requirements for maintaining system performance to meet the original design intent during the operation phase.
11. Identification and documentation of personnel who are qualified to service, maintain and decommission the ESS, and respond to incidents involving the ESS, including documentation that such service has been contracted for.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

12. A decommissioning plan for removing the ESS from service, and from the facility in which it is located. The plan shall include details on providing a safe, orderly shutdown of energy storage and safety systems with notification to the code officials prior to the actual decommissioning of the system. The decommissioning plan shall include contingencies for removing an intact operational ESS from service, and for removing an ESS from service that has been damaged by a fire or other event.

Exceptions:

1. Commissioning shall not be required for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems at facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities that comply with NFPA 76 and operate at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC. A decommissioning plan shall be provided and maintained where required by the fire code official.

2. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems less than 50 VAC, 60 VDC that are in telecommunications facilities for installations of communications equipment under the exclusive control of communications utilities, and are located outdoors or in building spaces or walk-in units used exclusively for such installations that are in compliance with NFPA 76, shall be permitted to have a commissioning plan in compliance with recognized industry practices in lieu of complying with Section 1207.2.1.

3. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utilities, and are located in building spaces or walk-in units used exclusively for such installations, shall be permitted to have a commissioning plan in compliance with appliable governmental laws and regulations in lieu of developing a commissioning plan in accordance with Section 1207.2.1.

1207.2.1.1 Initial acceptance testing. During the commissioning process an ESS shall be evaluated for proper operation in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the commissioning plan prior to final approval.

1207.2.1.2 Commissioning report. A report describing the results of the system commissioning, including the results of the initial acceptance testing required in Section 1207.2.1.1, shall be provided to the fire code official prior to final inspection and approval and maintained at an approved on-site location.

1207.2.2 Operation and maintenance. An operation and maintenance manual shall be provided to both the ESS owner or their authorized agent and the ESS operator before the ESS is put into operation and shall include the following:

1. Manufacturer's operation manuals and maintenance manuals for the entire ESS, or for each component of the system requiring maintenance, that clearly identify the required routine maintenance actions.

2. Name, address and phone number of a service agency that has been contracted to service the ESS and its associated safety systems.

3. Maintenance and calibration information, including wiring diagrams, control drawings, schematics, system programming instructions and control sequence descriptions, for all energy storage control systems.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

4. Desired or field-determined control set points that are permanently recorded on control drawings at control devices or, for digital control systems, in system programming instructions.
5. A schedule for inspecting and recalibrating all ESS controls.
6. A service record log form that lists the schedule for all required servicing and maintenance actions and space for logging such actions that are completed over time and retained on-site.

The ESS shall be operated and maintained in accordance with the manual and a copy of the manual shall be retained at an approved on-site location.

1207.2.2.1 Ongoing inspection and testing. Systems that monitor and protect the ESS installation shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the operation and maintenance manual. Inspection and testing records shall be maintained in the operation and maintenance manual.

1207.2.3 Decommissioning. The code official shall be notified prior to the decommissioning of an ESS. Decommissioning shall be performed in accordance with the decommissioning plan that includes the following:

1. A narrative description of the activities to be accomplished for removing the ESS from service, and from the facility in which it is located.
2. A listing of any contingencies for removing an intact operational ESS from service, and for removing an ESS from service that has been damaged by a fire or other event.

1207.3 Equipment. ESS equipment shall be in accordance with Sections 1207.3.1 through 1207.3.9.

1207.3.1 Energy storage system listings. ESS shall be listed in accordance with UL 9540.

Exceptions:

1. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems less than 50 VAC, 60 VDC in telecommunications facilities for installations of communications equipment under the exclusive control of communications utilities located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations that are in compliance with NFPA 76.

2. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.

3. Lead-acid battery systems in uninterruptable power supplies listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1778 and utilized for standby power applications.

1207.3.2 Equipment listing. Chargers, inverters and energy storage management systems shall be covered as part of the UL 9540 listing or shall be listed separately.

1207.3.3 Utility interactive systems. Inverters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1741. Only inverters listed and labeled for utility interactive system use and identified as interactive shall be allowed to operate in parallel with the electric utility power system to supply power to common loads.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1207.3.4 Energy storage management system. Where required by the ESS listing, an approved energy storage management system that monitors and balances cell voltages, currents and temperatures within the manufacturer's specifications shall be provided. The system shall disconnect electrical connections to the ESS or otherwise place it in a safe condition if potentially hazardous temperatures or other conditions such as short circuits, over voltage or under voltage are detected.

1207.3.5 Enclosures. Enclosures of ESS shall be of noncombustible construction.

1207.3.6 Repairs. Repairs of ESS shall only be done by qualified personnel. Repairs with other than identical parts shall be considered retrofitting and comply with Section 1207.3.7. Repairs shall be documented in the service records log.

1207.3.7 Retrofits. Retrofitting of an existing ESS shall comply with the following:

1. A construction permit shall be obtained in accordance with *Chapter 1*.
2. New batteries, battery modules, capacitors and similar ESS components shall be listed.
3. Battery management and other monitoring systems shall be connected and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.
4. The overall installation shall continue to comply with UL 9540 listing requirements, where applicable.
5. Systems that have been retrofitted shall be commissioned in accordance with Section 1207.2.1.
6. Retrofits shall be documented in the service records log.

1207.3.7.1 Retrofitting lead acid and nickel cadmium. Changing out or retrofitting of lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries with other lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries in the following applications shall be considered repairs where there is no increase in system size or energy capacity greater than 10 percent of the original design.

1. At facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities that comply with NFPA 76 and operate at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC.

2. Battery systems used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.

3. Batteries in uninterruptible power supplies listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1778 and used for standby power applications only.

1207.3.8 Replacements. Replacements of ESS shall be considered new ESS installations and shall comply with the provisions of Section 1207 as applicable to new ESS. The ESS being replaced shall be decommissioned in accordance with Section 1207.2.3.

1207.3.9 Reused and repurposed equipment. Equipment and materials shall only be reused or reinstalled as permitted in Section *104.8.1*. Storage batteries previously used in other applications, such as electric vehicle propulsion, shall not be reused in applications regulated by Chapter 12 unless approved by the fire code official and unless the equipment is refurbished by a battery refurbishing company approved in accordance with UL 1974.

1207.4 General installations requirements. Stationary and mobile ESS shall comply with the requirements of Sections 1207.4.1 through 1207.4.12.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1207.4.1 Electrical disconnects. Where the ESS disconnecting means is not within sight of the main electrical service disconnecting means, placards or directories shall be installed at the location of the main electrical service disconnecting means indicating the location of stationary storage battery system disconnecting means in accordance with NFPA 70.

Exception: Electrical disconnects for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems at facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities and operating at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC shall be permitted to have electrical disconnects signage in accordance with NFPA 76.

1207.4.2 Working clearances. Access and working space shall be provided and maintained about all electrical equipment to permit ready and safe operation and maintenance of such equipment in accordance with NFPA 70 and the manufacturer's instructions.

1207.4.3 Fire-resistance-rated separations. Rooms and other indoor areas containing ESS shall be separated from other areas of the building in accordance with Section 1207.7.4. ESS shall be permitted to be in the same room with the equipment they support.

1207.4.4 Seismic and structural design. Stationary ESS shall comply with the seismic design requirements in Chapter 16 of the *building code*, and shall not exceed the floor loading limitation of the building.

1207.4.5 Vehicle impact protection. Where ESS are subject to impact by a motor vehicle, including fork lifts, vehicle impact protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 312.

1207.4.6 Combustible storage. Combustible materials shall not be stored in ESS rooms, areas or walk-in units. Combustible materials in occupied work centers covered by Section 1207.4.10 shall be stored at least 3 feet (914 mm) from ESS cabinets.

1207.4.7 Toxic and highly toxic gases. ESS that have the potential to release toxic and highly toxic gas during charging, discharging and normal use conditions shall be provided with a hazardous exhaust system in accordance with Section 502.8 of the *mechanical code*.

1207.4.8 Signage. Approved signs shall be provided on or adjacent to all entry doors for ESS rooms or areas and on enclosures of ESS cabinets and walk-in units located outdoors, on rooftops or in open parking garages. Signs designed to meet both the requirements of this section and NFPA 70 shall be permitted. The signage shall include the following or equivalent:

1. "ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM," "BATTERY STORAGE SYSTEM," "CAPACITOR ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEM" or the equivalent.
2. The identification of the electrochemical ESS technology present.
3. "ENERGIZED ELECTRICAL CIRCUITS."
4. Where water-reactive electrochemical ESS are present, the signage shall include "APPLY NO WATER."
5. Current contact information, including phone number, for personnel authorized to service the equipment and for fire mitigation personnel required by Section 1207.1.8.1.

Exception: Existing electrochemical ESS shall be permitted to include the signage required at the time they were installed.

1207.4.9 Security of installations. Rooms, areas and walk-in units in which electrochemical ESS are located shall be secured against unauthorized entry and safeguarded in an approved

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

manner. Security barriers, fences, landscaping and other enclosures shall not inhibit the required air flow to or exhaust from the electrochemical ESS and its components.

1207.4.10 Occupied work centers. Electrochemical ESS located in rooms or areas occupied by personnel not directly involved with maintenance, service and testing of the systems shall comply with the following:

1. Electrochemical ESS located in occupied work centers shall be housed in locked noncombustible cabinets or other enclosures to prevent access by unauthorized personnel.
2. Where electrochemical ESS are contained in cabinets in occupied work centers, the cabinets shall be located within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the equipment that they support.
3. Cabinets shall include signage complying with Section 1207.4.8.

1207.4.11 Open rack installations. Where electrochemical ESS are installed in a separate equipment room and only authorized personnel have access to the room, they shall be permitted to be installed on an open rack for ease of maintenance.

1207.4.12 Walk-in units. Walk-in units shall be entered only for inspection, maintenance and repair of ESS units and ancillary equipment, and shall not be occupied for other purposes.

1207.5 Electrochemical ESS protection. The protection of electrochemical ESS shall be in accordance with Sections 1207.5.1 through 1207.5.8 where required by Sections 1207.7 through 1207.10.

TABLE 1207.5
MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITIES OF ELECTROCHEMICAL ESS

TECHNOLOGY	MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE QUANTITIES [a]
STORAGE BATTERIES	
Flow batteries[b]	600 kWh
Lead-acid, all types	Unlimited
Lithium-ion	600 kWh
Nickel-cadmium (Ni-Cd), nickel-metal hydride (NI-MH) and nickel zinc (Ni-Zn)	Unlimited
Sodium nickel chloride	600 kWh
Zinc-manganese dioxide (Zn-MnO_2)	Unlimited
Other battery technologies	200 kWh
CAPACITORS	
All types	20 kWh
OTHER ELECTROCHEMICAL ESS	
All types	20 kWh

For SI: 1 kilowatt hour = 3.6 megajoules.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

a. For electrochemical ESS units rated in amp-hours, kWh shall equal rated voltage times the amp-hour rating divided by 1,000.
b. Shall include vanadium, zinc-bromine, polysulfide-bromide and other flowing electrolyte-type technologies.

1207.5.1 Size and separation. Electrochemical ESS shall be segregated into groups not exceeding 50 kWh (180 megajoules). Each group shall be separated a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) from other groups and from walls in the storage room or area. The storage arrangements shall comply with Chapter 10.

Exceptions:

1. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems in facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities and operating at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC in accordance with NFPA 76.
2. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.
3. Lead-acid battery systems in uninterruptable power supplies listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1778, utilized for standby power applications, and limited to not more than 10 percent of the floor area on the floor on which the ESS is located.
4. The *fire code official* is authorized to approve larger capacities or smaller separation distances based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.5.

1207.5.2 Maximum allowable quantities. Fire areas within rooms, areas and walk-in units containing electrochemical ESS shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities in Table 1207.5.

Exceptions:

1. Where approved by the fire code official, rooms, areas and walk-in units containing electrochemical ESS that exceed the amounts in Table 1207.5 shall be permitted based on a hazardous mitigation analysis in accordance with Section 1207.1.6 and large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7.
2. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems installed in facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities, and operating at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC in accordance with NFPA 76.
3. Dedicated-use buildings in compliance with Section 1207.7.1.

1207.5.2.1 Mixed electrochemical energy systems. Where rooms, areas and walk-in units contain different types of electrochemical energy technologies, the total aggregate quantities of the systems shall be determined based on the sum of percentages of each technology-type quantity divided by the maximum allowable quantity of each technology type. The sum of the percentages shall not exceed 100 percent of the maximum allowable quantity.

1207.5.3 Elevation. Electrochemical ESS shall not be located in the following areas:

1. Where the floor is located more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) above the lowest level of fire department vehicle access.
2. Where the floor is located below the lowest level of exit discharge.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Exceptions:

1. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC installed in facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities in accordance with NFPA 76.
2. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.
3. Lead-acid battery systems in uninterruptable powe supplies listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1778, utilized for standby power applications, which is limited to not more than 10 percent fo the floor area on the floor on which the ESS is located.
4. Where *approved*, installations shall be permitted in underground vaults complying with NFPA 70, Article 450, Part III.
5. Where *approved* by the fire code official, installations shall be permitted on higher and lower floors.

1207.5.4 Fire detection. An approved automatic smoke detection system or radiant energy-sensing fire detection system complying with Section 907.2 shall be installed in rooms, indoor areas and walk-in units containing electrochemical ESS. An approved radiant energy-sensing fire detection system shall be installed to protect open parking garage and rooftop installations. Alarm signals from detection systems shall be transmitted to a central station, proprietary or remote station service in accordance with NFPA 72, or where approved to a constantly attended location.

Exception: Normally unoccupied, remote stand-alone telecommunications structures with a gross floor area of less than 1,500 square feet (139 m^2) utilizing lead-acid or nickel-cadmium batteries shall not be required to have a fire detection system installed.

1207.5.4.1 System status. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations, shall be allowed to use the process control system to monitor the smoke or radiant energy-sensing fire detectors required in Section 1207.5.4.

1207.5.5 Fire suppression systems. Rooms and areas within buildings and walk-in units containing electrochemical ESS shall be protected by an automatic fire suppression system designed and installed in accordance with one of the following:

1. Automatic sprinkler systems designed and installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 for ESS units (groups) with a maximum stored energy capacity of 50 kWh, as described in Section 1207.5.1, shall be designed with a minimum density of 0.3 gpm/ft^2 (1.14 L/min) based over the area of the room or 2,500 square-foot (232 m^2) design area, whichever is smaller, unless a lower density is approved based on largescale fire testing in accordance with Section 1207.1.7.
2. Automatic sprinkler systems designed and installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 for ESS units (groups) exceeding 50 kWh shall use a density based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

3. The following alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems designed and installed in accordance with Section 904, provided that the installation is approved by the fire code official based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7:

   3.1. NFPA 12, Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems.

   3.2. NFPA 15, Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection.

   3.3. NFPA 750, Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems.

   3.4. NFPA 2001, Standard on Clean Agent Fire-Extinguishing Systems.

   3.5. NFPA 2010, Standard for Fixed Aerosol Fire-Extinguishing Systems.

Exceptions:

1. Fire suppression systems for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems at facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities that operate at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC shall be provided where required by NFPA 76.

2. Lead acid and nickel-cadmium systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations, shall not be required to have a fire suppression system installed.

3. Lead-acid battery systems in uninterruptable power supplies listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1778, utilized for standby power applications, which is limited to not more than 10 percent of the floor area on the floor on which the ESS is located, shall not be required to have a fire suppression system.

1207.5.5.1 Water-reactive systems. Electrochemical ESS that utilize water-reactive materials shall be protected by an approved alternative automatic fire-extinguishing system in accordance with Section 904, where the installation is approved by the fire code official based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7.

1207.5.6 Maximum enclosure size. Outdoor walk-in units housing ESS shall not exceed 53 feet by 8 feet by 9.5 feet high (16 154 mm x 2438 mm x 2896 mm), not including bolt-on HVAC and related equipment, as approved. Outdoor walk-in units exceeding these limitations shall be considered indoor installations and comply with the requirements in Section 1207.7.

1207.5.7 Vegetation control. Areas within 10 feet (3048 mm) on each side of outdoor ESS shall be cleared of combustible vegetation and other combustible growth. Single specimens of trees, shrubbery or cultivated ground cover such as green grass, ivy, succulents or similar plants used as ground cover shall be permitted to be exempt provided that they do not form a means of readily transmitting fire.

1207.5.8 Means of egress separation. ESS located outdoors and in open parking garages shall be separated from any means of egress as required by the fire code official to ensure safe egress under fire conditions, but in no case less than 10 feet (3048 mm).

Exception: The fire code official is authorized to approve a reduced separation distance if large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7 is provided that shows that a fire involving the ESS will not adversely impact occupant egress.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1207.6 Electrochemical ESS technology-specific protection. Electrochemical ESS installations shall comply with the requirements of this section in accordance with the applicable requirements of Table 1207.6.

TABLE 1207.6
ELECTROCHEMICAL ESS TECHNOLOGY-SPECIFIC REQUIREMENTS

COMPLIANCE REQUIRED[b]		BATTERY TECHNOLOGY						OTHER ESS AND BATTERY TECHNOLOGIES[b]	CAPACITOR ESS[b]
Feature	Section	Lead-acid	Nickel cadmium (Ni-Cd), nickel-metal hydride (Ni-MH) and nickel zinc (Ni-Zn)	Zinc-manganese dioxide ($Zn-MnO_2$)	Lithium-ion	Flow	Sodium nickel chloride		
Exhaust ventilation	1207.6.1	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Explosion control	1207.6.3	Yes[a]	Yes[a]	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
Safety caps	1207.6.4	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	No	Yes	Yes
Spill control and neutralization	1207.6.2	Yes[c]	Yes[c]	Yes[f]	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes
Thermal runaway	1207.6.5	Yes[d]	Yes	Yes[e]	Yes[e]	No	Yes	Yes[e]	Yes

a. Not required for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium batteries at facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities that comply with NFPA 76 and operate at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC.
b. Protection shall be provided unless documentation acceptable to the fire code official is provided in accordance with Section *104.8.2* that provides justification why the protection is not necessary based on the technology used.
c. Applicable to vented-type (i.e., flooded) nickel-cadmium and lead-acid batteries.
d. Not required for vented-type (i.e., flooded) batteries.
e. The thermal runaway protection is permitted to be part of a battery management system that has been evaluated with the battery as part of the evaluation to UL 1973.
f. Not required for batteries with jelled electrolyte.

1207.6.1 Exhaust ventilation. Where required by Table 1207.6 or elsewhere in this code, exhaust ventilation of rooms, areas and walk-in units containing electrochemical ESS shall be provided in accordance with the *mechanical code* and Section 1207.6.1.1 or 1207.6.1.2.

1207.6.1.1 Ventilation based on LFL. The exhaust ventilation system shall be designed to limit the maximum concentration of flammable gas to 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL) of the total volume of the room, area or walk-in unit during the worst-case event of simultaneous charging of batteries at the maximum charge rate, in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

1207.6.1.2 Ventilation based on exhaust rate. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided at a rate of not less than 1 $ft^3/min/ft^2$ (5.1 $L/sec/m^2$) of floor area of the room, area or walk-in unit. The ventilation shall be either continuous or shall be activated by a gas detection system in accordance with Section 1207.6.1.2.4.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1207.6.1.2.1 Standby power. Mechanical exhaust ventilation shall be provided with a minimum of 2 hours of standby power in accordance with Section 1203.2.5.

1207.6.1.2.2 Installation instructions. Required mechanical exhaust ventilation systems shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and the *mechanical code*.

1207.6.1.2.3 Supervision. Required mechanical exhaust ventilation systems shall be supervised by an approved central station, proprietary or remote station service in accordance with NFPA 72, or shall initiate an audible and visible signal at an approved constantly attended on-site location.

1207.6.1.2.4 Gas detection system. Where required by Section 1207.6.1.2, rooms, areas and walk-in units containing ESS shall be protected by an approved continuous gas detection system that complies with Section 916 and with the following:

1. The gas detection system shall be designed to activate the mechanical ventilation system when the level of flammable gas in the room, area or walk-in unit exceeds 25 percent of the LFL.
2. The mechanical ventilation system shall remain on until the flammable gas detected is less than 25 percent of the LFL.
3. The gas detection system shall be provided with a minimum of 2 hours of standby power in accordance with Section 1203.2.5.
4. Failure of the gas detection system shall annunciate a trouble signal at an approved central station, proprietary or remote station service in accordance with NFPA 72, or shall initiate an audible and visible trouble signal at an approved constantly attended on-site location.

1207.6.2 Spill control and neutralization. Where required by Table 1207.6 or elsewhere in this code, areas containing free-flowing liquid electrolyte or hazardous materials shall be provided with spill control and neutralization in accordance with this section.

1207.6.2.1 Spill control. Spill control shall be provided to prevent the flow of liquid electrolyte or hazardous materials to adjoining rooms or areas. The method shall be capable of containing a spill from the single largest battery or vessel.

1207.6.2.2 Neutralization. An approved method that is capable of neutralizing spilled liquid electrolyte from the largest battery or vessel to a pH between 5.0 and 9.0 shall be provided.

1207.6.2.3 Communications utilities. The requirements of Section 1207.6.2 shall apply only when the aggregate capacity of multiple vessels exceeds 1,000 gallons (3785 L) for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems operating at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC that are located at facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities, and those facilities comply with NFPA 76 in addition to applicable requirements of this code.

1207.6.3 Explosion control. Where required by Table 1207.6 or elsewhere in this code, explosion control complying with Section 911 shall be provided for rooms, areas, ESS cabinets or ESS walk-in units containing electrochemical ESS technologies.

Exceptions:

1. Where approved, explosion control is permitted to be waived by the fire code official based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7 that

demonstrates that flammable gases are not liberated from electrochemical ESS cells or modules.

2. Where approved, explosion control is permitted to be waived by the fire code official based on documentation provided in accordance with Section *104.8.2* that demonstrates that the electrochemical ESS technology to be used does not have the potential to release flammable gas concentrations in excess of 25 percent of the LFL anywhere in the room, area, walk-in unit or structure under thermal runaway or other fault conditions.
3. Where approved, ESS cabinets that have no debris, shrapnel or enclosure pieces ejected during large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.5 shall be permitted in lieu of providing explosion control complying with Section 911.
4. Explosion control is not required for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems less than 50 VAC, 60 VDC in telecommunication facilities under the exclusive control of communications utilities located in building spaces or walk-in units used exclusively for such installations.
5. Explosion control is not required for lead-acid and nickel-cadmium systems used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, located in building spaces or walk-in units used exclusively for such installations.
6. Explosion control is not required for lead-acid battery systems in uninterruptable power supplies listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1778, utilized for standby power applications, and housed in a single cabinet in a single fire area in buildings or walk-in units.

1207.6.4 Safety caps. Where required by Table 1207.6 or elsewhere in this code, vented batteries and other ESS shall be provided with flame-arresting safety caps.

1207.6.5 Thermal runaway. Where required by Table 1207.6 or elsewhere in this code, batteries and other ESS shall be provided with a listed device or other approved method to prevent, detect and minimize the impact of thermal runaway.

1207.7 Indoor installations. Indoor ESS installations shall be in accordance with Sections 1207.7.1 through 1207.7.4.

TABLE 1207.7
INDOOR ESS INSTALLATIONS

COMPLIANCE REQUIRED		DEDICATED-USE BUILDINGS[a]	NONDEDICATED-USE BUILDINGS[b]
Feature	Section		
Dwelling units and sleeping units	1207.7.3	NA	Yes
Elevation	1207.5.3	Yes	Yes
Fire suppression systems	1207.5.5	Yes[c]	Yes
Fire-resistance-rated separations	1207.7.4	Yes	Yes
General installation requirements	1207.4	Yes	Yes
Maximum allowable quantities	1207.5.2	No	Yes
Size and separation	1207.5.1	Yes	Yes

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Smoke and automatic fire detection[e]	1207.5.4	Yes[d]	Yes
Technology specific protection	1207.6	Yes	Yes

NA = Not Allowed.

a. See Section 1207.7.1.
b. See Section 1207.7.2.
c. Where approved by the fire code official, fire suppression systems are permitted to be omitted in dedicated-use buildings located more than 100 feet (30.5 m) from buildings, lot lines, public ways, stored combustible materials, hazardous materials, high-piled stock and other exposure hazards.
d. Where approved by the fire code official, alarm signals are not required to be transmitted to a central station, proprietary or remote station service in accordance with NFPA 72, or a constantly attended location where local fire alarm annunciation is provided and trained personnel are always present.
e. Lead-acid and nickel-cadmium battery systems installed in Group U buildings and structures less than 1,500 square feet (139 m^2) under the exclusive control of communications utilities, and operating at less than 50 VAC and 60 VDC in accordance with NFPA 76, are not required to have an approved automatic smoke or fire detection system.

1207.7.1 Dedicated-use buildings. For the purpose of Table 1207.7, dedicated-use ESS buildings shall be classified as Group F-1 occupancies and comply with all the following:

1. The building shall only be used for ESS, electrical energy generation and other electrical grid-related operations.
2. Occupants in the rooms and areas containing ESS are limited to personnel that operate, maintain, service, test and repair the ESS and other energy systems.
3. No other occupancy types shall be permitted in the building.
4. Administrative and support personnel shall be permitted in areas within the buildings that do not contain ESS, provided that:
   4.1. The areas do not occupy more than 10 percent of the building area of the story in which they are located.
   4.2. A means of egress is provided from the incidental use areas to the public way that does not require occupants to traverse through areas containing ESS or other energy system equipment.

1207.7.2 Nondedicated-use buildings. For the purpose of Table 1207.7, nondedicated-use buildings include all buildings that contain ESS and do not comply with Section 1207.7.1 dedicated-use building requirements.

1207.7.3 Dwelling units and sleeping units. ESS shall not be installed in sleeping units or in habitable spaces of dwelling units.

1207.7.4 Fire-resistance-rated separations. Rooms and areas containing ESS shall include fire-resistance-rated separations as follows:

1. In dedicated-use buildings, rooms and areas containing ESS shall be separated from areas in which administrative and support personnel are located.
2. In nondedicated-use buildings, rooms and areas containing ESS shall be separated from other areas in the building.

Separation shall be provided by 2-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *building code* and 2-hour horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *building code*, as appropriate.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1207.8 Outdoor installations. Outdoor installations shall be in accordance with Sections 1207.8.1 through 1207.8.3. Exterior wall installations for individual ESS units not exceeding 20 kWh shall be in accordance with Section 1207.8.4.

TABLE 1207.8
OUTDOOR ESS INSTALLATIONS[a]

COMPLIANCE REQUIRED		REMOTE INSTALLATIONS[a]	INSTALLATIONS NEAR EXPOSURES[b]
Feature	Section		
All ESS installations	1207.4	Yes	Yes
Clearance to exposures	1207.8.3	Yes	Yes
Fire suppression systems	1207.5.5	Yes[c]	Yes
Maximum allowable quantities	1207.5.2	No	Yes
Maximum enclosure size	1207.5.6	Yes	Yes
Means of egress separation	1207.5.8	Yes	Yes
Size and separation	1207.5.1	No	Yes[d]
Smoke and automatic fire detection	1207.5.4	Yes	Yes
Technology-specific protection	1207.6	Yes	Yes
Vegetation control	1207.5.7	Yes	Yes

a. See Section 1207.8.1.
b. See Section 1207.8.2.
c. Where approved by the fire code official, fire suppression systems are permitted to be omitted.
d. In outdoor walk-in units, spacing is not required between ESS units and the walls of the enclosure.

1207.8.1 Remote outdoor installations. For the purpose of Table 1207.8, remote outdoor installations include ESS located more than 100 feet (30 480 mm) from buildings, lot lines, public ways, stored combustible materials, hazardous materials, high-piled stock and other exposure hazards.

1207.8.2 Installations near exposures. For the purpose of Table 1207.8, installations near exposures include all outdoor ESS installations that do not comply with Section 1207.8.1 remote outdoor location requirements.

1207.8.3 Clearance to exposures. ESS located outdoors shall be separated by a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the following exposures:

1. Lot lines.
2. Public ways.
3. Buildings.
4. Stored combustible materials.
5. Hazardous materials.
6. High-piled stock.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

7. Other exposure hazards.

Exceptions:

1. Clearances are permitted to be reduced to 3 feet (914 mm) where a 1-hour free-standing fire barrier suitable for exterior use and extending 5 feet (1524 mm) above and 5 feet (1524 mm) beyond the physical boundary of the ESS installation is provided to protect the exposure.
2. Clearances to buildings are permitted to be reduced to 3 feet (914 mm) where noncombustible exterior walls with no openings or combustible overhangs are provided on the wall adjacent to the ESS and the fire-resistance rating of the exterior wall is a minimum of 2 hours.
3. Clearances to buildings are permitted to be reduced to 3 feet (914 mm) where a weatherproof enclosure constructed of noncombustible materials is provided over the ESS, and it has been demonstrated that a fire within the enclosure will not ignite combustible materials outside the enclosure based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7.

1207.8.4 Exterior wall installations. ESS shall be permitted to be installed outdoors on exterior walls of buildings when all of the following conditions are met:

1. The maximum energy capacity of individual ESS units shall not exceed 20 kWh.
2. The ESS shall comply with applicable requirements in Section 1207.
3. The ESS shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and their listing.
4. Individual ESS units shall be separated from each other by at least 3 feet (914 mm).
5. The ESS shall be separated from doors, windows, operable openings into buildings or HVAC inlets by at least 5 feet (1524 mm).

Exception: Where approved, smaller separation distances in Items 4 and 5 shall be permitted based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7.

1207.9 Special installations. Rooftop and open parking garage ESS installations shall comply with Sections 1207.9.1 through 1207.9.6.

TABLE 1207.9
SPECIAL ESS INSTALLATIONS

COMPLIANCE REQUIRED		ROOFTOPS[a]	OPEN PARKING GARAGES[b]
Feature	Section		
All ESS installations	1207.4	Yes	Yes
Clearance to exposures	1207.9.3	Yes	Yes
Fire suppression systems	1207.9.4	Yes	Yes
Maximum allowable quantities	1207.5.2	Yes	Yes
Maximum enclosure size	1207.5.6	Yes	Yes
Means of egress separation	1207.5.8	Yes	Yes
Open parking garage installations	1207.9.6	No	Yes

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Rooftop installations	1207.9.5	Yes	No
Size and separation	1207.5.1	Yes	Yes
Smoke and automatic fire detection	1207.5.4	Yes	Yes
Technology-specific protection	1207.6	Yes	Yes

a. See Section 1207.9.1.
b. See Section 1207.9.2.

1207.9.1 Rooftop installations. For the purpose of Table 1207.9, rooftop ESS installations are those located on the roofs of buildings.

1207.9.2 Open parking garage installations. For the purpose of Table 1207.9, open parking garage ESS installations are those located in a structure or portion of a structure that complies with Section 406.5 of the *building code*.

1207.9.3 Clearance to exposures. ESS located on rooftops and in open parking garages shall be separated by a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the following exposures:

1. Buildings, except the building on which rooftop ESS is mounted.
2. Any portion of the building on which a rooftop system is mounted that is elevated above the rooftop on which the system is installed.
3. Lot lines.
4. Public ways.
5. Stored combustible materials.
6. Locations where motor vehicles can be parked.
7. Hazardous materials.
8. Other exposure hazards.

Exceptions:

1. Clearances are permitted to be reduced to 3 feet (914 mm) where a 1-hour free-standing fire barrier suitable for exterior use and extending 5 feet (1524 mm) above and 5 feet (1524 mm) beyond the physical boundary of the ESS installation is provided to protect the exposure.
2. Clearances are permitted to be reduced to 3 feet (914 mm) where a weatherproof enclosure constructed of noncombustible materials is provided over the ESS, and it has been demonstrated that a fire within the enclosure will not ignite combustible materials outside the enclosure based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7.

1207.9.4 Fire suppression systems. ESS located in walk-in units on rooftops or in walk-in units in open parking garages shall be provided with automatic fire suppression systems within the ESS enclosure in accordance with Section 1207.5.5. Areas containing ESS other than walk-in units in open parking structures on levels not open above to the sky shall be provided with an automatic fire suppression system complying with Section 1207.5.5.

Exception: A fire suppression system is not required in open parking garages if large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7 is provided that shows that a fire will not impact the exposures in Section 1207.9.3.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1207.9.5 Rooftop installations. ESS and associated equipment that are located on rooftops and not enclosed by building construction shall comply with the following:

1. Stairway access to the roof for emergency response and fire department personnel shall be provided either through a bulkhead from the interior of the building or a stairway on the exterior of the building.
2. Service walkways at least 5 feet (1524 mm) in width shall be provided for service and emergency personnel from the point of access to the roof to the system.
3. ESS and associated equipment shall be located from the edge of the roof a distance equal to at least the height of the system, equipment or component but not less than 5 feet (1524 mm).
4. The roofing materials under and within 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from an ESS or associated equipment shall be noncombustible or shall have a Class A rating when tested in accordance with ASTM E108 or UL 790.
5. A Class I standpipe outlet shall be installed at an approved location on the roof level of the building or in the stairway bulkhead at the top level.
6. The ESS shall be the minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the fire service access point on the rooftop.

1207.9.6 Open parking garages. ESS and associated equipment that are located in open parking garages shall comply with all of the following:

1. ESS shall not be located within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of air inlets for building HVAC systems.

   Exception: This distance shall be permitted to be reduced to 25 feet (7620 mm) if the automatic fire alarm system monitoring the radiant-energy sensing detectors de-energizes the ventilation system connected to the air intakes upon detection of fire.
2. ESS shall not be located within 25 feet (7620 mm) of exits leading from the attached building where located on a covered level of the parking structure not directly open to the sky above.
3. An approved fence with a locked gate or other approved barrier shall be provided to keep the general public at least 5 feet (1524 mm) from the outer enclosure of the ESS.

1207.10 Mobile ESS equipment and operations. Mobile ESS equipment and operations shall comply with Sections 1207.10.1 through 1207.10.7.7.

TABLE 1207.10
MOBILE ENERGY STORAGE SYSTEMS (ESS)

COMPLIANCE REQUIRED		DEPLOYMENT[a]
Feature	**Section**	
All ESS installations	1207.4	Yes[b]
Fire suppression systems	1207.5.5	Yes[c]
Maximum allowable quantities	1207.5.2	Yes
Maximum enclosure size	1207.5.6	Yes

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Means of egress separation	1207.5.8	Yes
Size and separation	1207.5.1	Yes[d]
Smoke and automatic fire detection	1207.5.4	Yes[e]
Technology-specific protection	1207.6	Yes
Vegetation control	1207.5.7	Yes

a. See Section 1207.10.2.
b. Mobile operations on wheeled vehicles and trailers shall not be required to comply with Section 1207.4.4 seismic and structural load requirements.
c. Fire suppression system connections to the water supply shall be permitted to use approved temporary connections.
d. In walk-in units, spacing is not required between ESS units and the walls of the enclosure.
e. Alarm signals are not required to be transmitted to an approved location for mobile ESS deployed 30 days or less.

1207.10.1 Charging and storage. For the purpose of Section 1207.10, charging and storage covers the operation where mobile ESS are charged and stored so they are ready for deployment to another site, and where they are charged and stored after a deployment.

Exception: Mobile ESS used to temporarily provide power to lead-acid and nickel-cadmium systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control of safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.

1207.10.2 Deployment. For the purpose of Section 1207.10, deployment covers operations where mobile ESS are located at a site other than the charging and storage site and are being used to provide power.

Exception: Mobile ESS used to temporarily provide power to lead-acid and nickel-cadmium systems that are used for DC power for control of substations and control or safe shutdown of generating stations under the exclusive control of the electric utility, and located outdoors or in building spaces used exclusively for such installations.

1207.10.3 Permits. Construction and operational permits shall be provided for charging and storage of mobile ESS and operational permits shall be provided for deployment of mobile ESS as required by Section 1207.1.4.

1207.10.4 Construction documents. Construction documents complying with Section 1207.1.5 shall be provided with the construction permit application for mobile ESS charging and storage locations.

1207.10.4.1 Deployment documents. The following information shall be provided with the operation permit applications for mobile ESS deployments:

1. Relevant information for the mobile ESS equipment and protection measures in the construction documents required by Section 1207.1.5.
2. Location and layout diagram of the area in which the mobile ESS is to be deployed, including a scale diagram of all nearby exposures.
3. Location and content of signage, including no smoking signs.
4. Description of fencing to be provided around the ESS, including locking methods.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

5. Details on fire suppression, smoke and automatic fire detection, system monitoring, thermal management, exhaust ventilation and explosion control, if provided.
6. For deployment, the intended duration of operation, including anticipated connection and disconnection times and dates.
7. Location and description of local staging stops during transit to the deployment site. See Section 1207.10.7.5.
8. Description of the temporary wiring, including connection methods, conductor type and size, and circuit overcurrent protection to be provided.
9. Description of how fire suppression system connections to water supplies or extinguishing agents are to be provided.
10. Contact information for personnel who are responsible for maintaining and servicing the equipment, and responding to emergencies as required by Section 1207.1.8.1.

1207.10.5 Approved locations. Locations where mobile ESS are charged, stored and deployed shall be restricted to the locations established on the construction and operational permits.

1207.10.6 Charging and storage. Installations where mobile ESS are charged and stored shall be treated as permanent ESS indoor or outdoor installations, and shall comply with the following sections, as applicable:

1. Indoor charging and storage shall comply with Section 1207.7.
2. Outdoor charging and storage shall comply with Section 1207.8.
3. Charging and storage on rooftops and in open parking garages shall comply with Section 1207.9.

Exceptions:

1. Electrical connections shall be permitted to be made using temporary wiring complying with the manufacturer's instructions, the UL 9540 listing and NFPA 70.
2. Fire suppression system connections to the water supply shall be permitted to use approved temporary connections.

1207.10.7 Deployed mobile ESS requirements. Deployed mobile ESS equipment and operations shall comply with this section and Table 1207.10.

1207.10.7.1 Duration. The duration of mobile ESS deployment shall not exceed 30 days.

Exceptions:

1. Mobile ESS deployments that provide power for durations longer than 30 days shall comply with Section 1207.10.6.
2. Mobile ESS deployments shall not exceed 180 days unless additional operational permits are obtained.

1207.10.7.2 Restricted locations. Deployed mobile ESS operations shall not be located indoors, in covered parking garages, on rooftops, below grade or under building overhangs.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1207.10.7.3 Clearance to exposures. Deployed mobile ESS shall be separated by a minimum of 10 feet (3048 mm) from the following exposures:

1. Public ways.
2. Buildings.
3. Stored combustible materials.
4. Hazardous materials.
5. High-piled storage.
6. Other exposure hazards.

Deployed mobile ESS shall be separated by a minimum of 50 feet (15 240 mm) from public seating areas and from tents, canopies and membrane structures with an occupant load of 30 or more.

1207.10.7.4 Electrical connections. Electrical connections shall be made in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and the UL 9540 listing. Temporary wiring for electrical power connections shall comply with NFPA 70. Fixed electrical wiring shall not be provided.

1207.10.7.5 Local staging. Mobile ESS in transit from the charging and storage location to the deployment location and back shall not be parked within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of an occupied building for more than 1 hour during transit, unless specifically approved by the fire code official when the permit is issued.

1207.10.7.6 Fencing. An approved fence with a locked gate or other approved barrier shall be provided to keep the general public at least 5 feet (1524 mm) from the outer enclosure of a deployed mobile ESS.

1207.10.7.7 Smoking. Smoking shall be prohibited within 10 feet (3048 mm) of mobile ESS. Signs shall be posted in accordance with Section 310.

1207.11 ESS in Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies. ESS in Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies shall be in accordance with Sections 1207.11.1 through 1207.11.9.

Exceptions:

1. ESS listed and labeled in accordance with UL 9540 and marked "For use in residential dwelling units," where installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.
2. ESS rated less than 1 kWh (3.6 megajoules).

1207.11.1 Equipment listings. ESS shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 9540.

1207.11.2 Installation. ESS shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and their listing.

1207.11.2.1 Spacing. Individual ESS units shall be separated from each other by at least 3 feet (914 mm) except where smaller separation distances are documented to be adequate based on large-scale fire testing complying with Section 1207.1.7.

1207.11.3 Location. ESS shall be installed only in the following locations:

1. Detached garages and detached accessory structures.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2. Attached garages separated from the dwelling unit living space and sleeping units in accordance with Section 406.3.2 of the *building code*.
3. Outdoors or on the exterior side of exterior walls located a minimum of 3 feet (914 mm) from doors and windows directly entering the dwelling unit.
4. Enclosed utility closets, basements, and storage or utility spaces within dwelling units and sleeping units with finished or noncombustible walls and ceilings. Walls and ceilings of unfinished wood-framed construction shall be provided with not less than 5/8-inch Type X gypsum wallboard.

ESS shall not be installed in sleeping rooms, or in closets or spaces opening directly into sleeping rooms.

1207.11.4 Energy ratings. Individual ESS units shall have a maximum rating of 20 kWh. The aggregate rating of the ESS shall not exceed:

1. 40 kWh within utility closets, basements, and storage or utility spaces.
2. 80 kWh in attached or detached garages and detached accessory structures.
3. 80 kWh on exterior walls.
4. 80 kWh outdoors on the ground.

ESS installations exceeding the permitted individual or aggregate ratings shall be installed in accordance with Sections 1207. Through 1207.9.

1207.11.5 Electrical installation. ESS shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70. Inverters shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 1741 or provided as part of the UL 9540 listing. Systems connected to the utility grid shall use inverters listed for utility interaction.

1207.11.6 Fire detection. ESS installed in Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies shall comply with the following:

1. Rooms and areas within *dwellings units*, *sleeping units, basements* and attached garages in which ESS are installed shall be protected by smoke alarms in accordance with Section 907.2.11.
2. A listed *heat alarm* shall be installed in locations where smoke alarms cannot be installed based on their listing.

1207.11.7 Protection from impact. ESS installed in a location subject to vehicle damage in accordance with Section 1207.11.7.1 or 1207.11.7.2 shall be provided with impact protection in accordance with Section 1207.11.7.3.

1207.11.7.1 Garages. Where an ESS is installed in the normal driving path of vehicle travel within a garage, impact protection complying with Section 1207.11.3 shall be provided. The normal driving path is a space between the garage vehicle opening and the interior face of the back wall to a height of 48 inches (1219 mm) above the finished floor. The width of the normal driving path shall be equal to the width of the garage door opening. Impact protection shall also be provided for an ESS installed at either of the flowing locations (see Figure 207.11.7.1):

1. On the interior face of the back wall and located within 36 inches (914 mm) to the left or to the right of the normal driving path.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2. On the interior face of a side wall and located within 24 inches (610 mm) of the back wall and 36 inches (914 mm) of the normal driving path.

Exception: Where the clear height of the vehicle garage opening is 7 feet 6 inches (2286 mm) or less, ESS installed not less than 36 inches (914 mm) above the finished floor are not subject to vehicle impact protection requirements.

See Figure 1207.11.7.1 in Chapter 12 of the 2024 International Fire Code

FIGURE 1207.11.7.1 ESS VEHICLE IMPACT PROTECTION

1207.11.7.2 Other locations subject to vehicle impact. Where an ESS is installed in a location other than as defined in Section 1207.11.7.1 and is subject to vehicle damage, impact protection shall be provided in accordance with Section 1207.11.7.3.

1207.11.7.3 Impact protection options. Where ESS is required to be protected from impact in accordance with Section 1207.11.7.1 or 1207.11.7.2, such protection shall comply with one of the following:

1. Bollards constructed in accordance with one of the following:

   1.1 Minimum 48 inches (1219 mm) in length by 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter Schedule 80 steel pipe embedded in a concrete pier not less than 12 inches (304 mm) deep and 6 inches (152 mm) in diameter, with at least 36 inches (914 mm) of pipe exposed, filled with concrete and spaced at a maximum interval of 5 feet (1524 mm). Each bollard shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from an ESS.

   1.2 Minimum 36 inches (914 mm) in height by 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter Schedule 80 steel pipe fully welded to a minimum 8 inches (203 mm) by ¼-inch (6.4 mm) thick steel plate and bolted to a concrete floor by means of four ½-inch (13 mm) concrete anchors with 3-inch (76 mm) minimum embedment. Spacing shall be not greater than 60 inches (1524 mm), and each bollard shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the ESS.

   1.3 Premanufactured steel pipe bollards shall be filled with concrete and anchored in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions, with spacing not greater than 60 inches (1524 mm). Each bollard shall be located not less than 6 inches (152 mm) from the ESS.

2. Wheel barriers constructed in accordance with one of the following:

   2.1 Four inches (102 mm) in height by 5 inches (127 mm) in width by 70 inches (1778 mm) in length wheel barrier made of concrete or polymer, anchored to the concrete floor not less than every 36 inches (914 mm) and located not less than 54 inches (1372 mm) from the ESS. Minimum 3½-inch (89 mm) diameter concrete anchors with 3-inch (76 mm) embedment per barrier shall be used. Spacing between barriers shall be not greater than 36 inches (914 mm).

   2.2 Premanufactured wheel barriers shall be anchored in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

3. Approved method designed to resist a 2,000-pound-force (8896 N) impact in the direction of travel at 24 inches (610 mm) above grade.

1207.11.8 Ventilation. Indoor installations of ESS that include batteries that produce hydrogen or other flammable gases during charging shall be provided with exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 304.5 of the *mechanical code*.

1207.11.9 Electric vehicle use. The temporary use of an owner or occupant's electric-powered vehicle to power a dwelling unit or sleeping unit while parked in an attached or detached garage or outdoors shall comply with the vehicle manufacturer's instructions and NFPA 70.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021 **and 2024**, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021 **and 2024**. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021 **and 2024**, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

1301:7-7-20 Aviation facilities.

Section 2001 General

2001.1 Scope. Airports, heliports, helistops and aircraft hangars shall be in accordance with this chapter.

2001.2 Regulations not covered. Regulations not specifically contained herein pertaining to airports, aircraft maintenance, aircraft hangars and appurtenant operations shall be in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

2001.3 Permits. For permits to operate aircraft-refueling vehicles, application of flammable or combustible finishes and hot work, see *Chapter 1*.

Section 2002 Definitions

2002.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2.

Aircraft operation area (AOA).

Airport.

Heliport.

Helistop.

Section 2003 General precautions

2003.1 Sources of ignition. Open flames, flame-producing devices and other sources of ignition shall not be permitted in a hangar, except in approved locations or in any location within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of an aircraft-fueling operation.

2003.2 Smoking. Smoking shall be prohibited in aircraft-refueling vehicles, aircraft hangars and aircraft operation areas used for cleaning, paint removal, painting operations or fueling. "No Smoking" signs shall be provided in accordance with Section 310.

Exception: Designated and approved smoking areas.

2003.3 Housekeeping. The aircraft operation area (AOA) and related areas shall be kept free from combustible debris at all times.

2003.4 Fire department access. Fire apparatus access roads shall be provided and maintained in accordance with Chapter 5. Fire apparatus access roads and aircraft parking positions shall be designed in a manner so as to preclude the possibility of fire vehicles traveling under any portion of a parked aircraft.

2003.5 Dispensing of flammable and combustible liquids. The dispensing, transferring and storage of flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with this chapter and Chapter 57. Aircraft motor vehicle fuel-dispensing facilities shall be in accordance with Chapter 23.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2003.6 Combustible storage. Combustible materials stored in aircraft hangars shall be stored in approved locations and containers.

2003.7 Hazardous material storage. Hazardous materials shall be stored in accordance with Chapter 50.

Section 2004 Aircraft maintenance

2004.1 Transferring flammable and combustible liquids. Flammable and combustible liquids shall not be dispensed into or removed from a container, tank, vehicle or aircraft except in approved locations.

2004.2 Application of flammable and combustible liquid finishes. The application of flammable or Class II combustible liquid finishes is prohibited unless both of the following conditions are met:

1. The application of the liquid finish is accomplished in an approved location.

2. The application methods and procedures are in accordance with Chapter 24.

2004.3 Cleaning parts. Class IA flammable liquids shall not be used to clean aircraft, aircraft parts or aircraft engines. Cleaning with other flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Section 5705.3.6.

2004.4 Spills. Sections 2004.4.1 through 2004.4.3 shall apply to spills of flammable and combustible liquids and other hazardous materials. Fuel spill control shall also comply with Section 2006.11.

2004.4.1 Cessation of work. Activities in the affected area not related to the mitigation of the spill shall cease until the spilled material has been removed or the hazard has been mitigated.

2004.4.2 Vehicle movement. Aircraft or other vehicles shall not be moved through the spill area until the spilled material has been removed or the hazard has been mitigated.

2004.4.3 Mitigation. Spills shall be reported, documented and mitigated in accordance with the provisions of this chapter and Section 5003.3.

2004.5 Running engines. Aircraft engines shall not be run in aircraft hangars except in approved engine test areas.

2004.6 Open flame. Repairing of aircraft requiring the use of open flames, spark-producing devices or the heating of parts above 500°F (260°C) shall only be done outdoors or in an area complying with the provisions of the *building code* for a Group F-1 occupancy.

2004.7 Other aircraft maintenance. Maintenance, repairs, modifications, or construction performed on aircraft not addressed elsewhere in this code shall be conducted in accordance with NFPA 410.

Section 2005 Portable fire extinguishers

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2005.1 General. Portable fire extinguishers suitable for flammable or combustible liquid and electrical-type fires shall be provided as specified in Sections 2005.2 through 2005.6 and Section 906. Extinguishers required by this section shall be inspected and maintained in accordance with Section 906.

2005.2 On towing vehicles. Vehicles used for towing aircraft shall be equipped with not less than one listed portable fire extinguisher complying with Section 906 and having a minimum rating of 20-B:C.

2005.3 On welding apparatus. Welding apparatus shall be equipped with not less than one listed portable fire extinguisher complying with Section 906 and having a minimum rating of 2-A:20-B:C.

2005.4 On aircraft fuel-servicing tank vehicles. Aircraft fuel-servicing tank vehicles shall be equipped with not less than two listed portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906, each having a minimum rating of 20-B:C. A portable fire extinguisher shall be provided with ready access from either side of the vehicle.

2005.5 On hydrant fuel-servicing vehicles. Hydrant fuel-servicing vehicles shall be equipped with not less than one listed portable fire extinguisher complying with Section 906, and having a minimum rating of 20-B:C.

2005.6 At fuel-dispensing stations. Portable fire extinguishers at fuel-dispensing stations shall be located such that pumps or dispensers are not more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from one such extinguisher. Fire extinguishers shall be provided as follows:

1. Where the open-hose discharge capacity of the fueling system is not more than 200 gallons per minute (13 L/s), not less than two listed portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 and having a minimum rating of 20-B:C shall be provided.

2. Where the open-hose discharge capacity of the fueling system is more than 200 gallons per minute (13 L/s) but not more than 350 gallons per minute (22 L/s), not less than one listed wheeled extinguisher complying with Section 906 and having a minimum extinguishing rating of 80-B:C, and a minimum agent capacity of 125 pounds (57 kg), shall be provided.

3. Where the open-hose discharge capacity of the fueling system is more than 350 gallons per minute (22 L/s), not less than two listed wheeled extinguishers complying with Section 906 and having a minimum rating of 80-B:C each, and a minimum capacity agent of 125 pounds (57 kg) each, shall be provided.

2005.7 Fire extinguisher access. Access to portable fire extinguishers required by this chapter shall be maintained at all times. Where necessary, provisions shall be made to clear accumulations of snow, ice and other forms of weather-induced obstructions.

2005.7.1 Cabinets. Cabinets and enclosed compartments used to house portable fire extinguishers shall be clearly marked with the words FIRE EXTINGUISHER in letters not less than 2 inches (51 mm) high. Cabinets and compartments shall be provided with ready access at all times.

2005.8 Reporting use. Use of a fire extinguisher under any circumstances shall be immediately reported to the manager of the airport and the fire code official.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Section 2006 Aircraft fueling

2006.1 Aircraft motor vehicle fuel-dispensing facilities. Aircraft motor vehicle fuel-dispensing facilities shall be in accordance with Chapter 23.

2006.2 Airport fuel systems. Airport fuel systems shall *comply with and* be designed and constructed in accordance with *the applicable portions of* NFPA 407.

2006.3 Construction of aircraft-fueling vehicles and accessories. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall comply with this section and shall be designed and constructed in accordance with NFPA 407.

2006.3.1 Transfer apparatus. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall be equipped and maintained with an approved transfer apparatus.

2006.3.1.1 Internal combustion type. Where such transfer apparatus is operated by an individual unit of the internal-combustion-motor type, such power unit shall be located as remotely as practicable from pumps, piping, meters, air eliminators, water separators, hose reels and similar equipment, and shall be housed in a separate compartment from any of the aforementioned items. The fuel tank in connection therewith shall be suitably designed and installed, and the maximum fuel capacity shall not exceed 5 gallons (19 L) where the tank is installed on the engine. The exhaust pipe, muffler and tail pipe shall be shielded.

2006.3.1.2 Gear operated. Where operated by gears or chains, the gears, chains, shafts, bearings, housing and all parts thereof shall be of an approved design and shall be installed and maintained in an approved manner.

2006.3.1.3 Vibration isolation. Flexible connections for the purpose of eliminating vibration are allowed if the material used therein is designed, installed and maintained in an approved manner, provided that such connections do not exceed 24 inches (610 mm) in length.

2006.3.2 Pumps. Pumps of a positive-displacement type shall be provided with a bypass relief valve set at a pressure of not more than 35 percent in excess of the normal working pressure of such unit. Such units shall be equipped and maintained with a pressure gauge on the discharge side of the pump.

2006.3.3 Dispensing hoses and nozzles. Hoses shall be designed for the transferring of hydrocarbon liquids and shall not be any longer than necessary to provide efficient fuel transfer operations. Hoses shall be equipped with an approved shutoff nozzle. Fuel-transfer nozzles shall be self-closing and designed to be actuated by hand pressure only. Notches and other devices shall not be used for holding a nozzle valve handle in the open position. Nozzles shall be equipped with a bonding cable complete with proper attachment for aircraft to be serviced.

2006.3.4 Protection of electrical equipment. Electric wiring, switches, lights and other sources of ignition, where located in a compartment housing piping, pumps, air eliminators, water separators, hose reels or similar equipment, shall be enclosed in a vapor-tight housing.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Electrical motors located in such a compartment shall be of a type approved for use as specified in NFPA 70.

2006.3.5 Venting of equipment compartments. Compartments housing piping, pumps, air eliminators, water separators, hose reels and similar equipment shall be adequately ventilated at floor level or within the floor itself.

2006.3.6 Accessory equipment. Ladders, hose reels and similar accessory equipment shall be of an approved type and constructed substantially as follows:

1. Ladders constructed of noncombustible material are allowed to be used with or attached to aircraft-fueling vehicles, provided that the manner of attachment or use of such ladders is approved and does not constitute an additional fire or accident hazard in the operation of such fueling vehicles.

2. Hose reels used in connection with fueling vehicles shall be constructed of noncombustible materials and shall be provided with a packing gland or other device that will preclude fuel leakage between reels and fuel manifolds.

2006.3.7 Electrical bonding provisions. Transfer apparatus shall be metallically interconnected with tanks, chassis, axles and springs of aircraft-fueling vehicles.

2006.3.7.1 Bonding cables. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall be provided and maintained with a substantial heavy-duty electrical cable of sufficient length to be bonded to the aircraft to be serviced. Such cable shall be metallically connected to the transfer apparatus or chassis of the aircraft-fueling vehicle on one end and shall be provided with a suitable metal clamp on the other end, to be fixed to the aircraft.

2006.3.7.2 Bonding cable protection. The bonding cable shall be bare or have a transparent protective sleeve and be stored on a reel or in a compartment provided for no other purpose. It shall be carried in such a manner that it will not be subjected to sharp kinks or accidental breakage under conditions of general use.

2006.3.8 Smoking. Smoking in aircraft-fueling vehicles is prohibited. Signs to this effect shall be conspicuously posted in the driver's compartment of all fueling vehicles.

2006.3.9 Smoking equipment. Smoking equipment such as cigarette lighters and ash trays shall not be provided in aircraft-fueling vehicles.

2006.4 Operation, maintenance and use of aircraft-fueling vehicles. The operation, maintenance and use of aircraft-fueling vehicles shall be in accordance with Sections 2006.4.1 through 2006.4.4 and other applicable provisions of this chapter.

2006.4.1 Proper maintenance. Aircraft-fueling vehicles and all related equipment shall be properly maintained and kept in good repair. Accumulations of oil, grease, fuel and other flammable or combustible materials is prohibited. Maintenance and servicing of such equipment shall be accomplished in approved areas.

2006.4.2 Vehicle integrity. Tanks, pipes, hoses, valves and other fuel delivery equipment shall be maintained leak free at all times.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2006.4.3 Removal from service. Aircraft-fueling vehicles and related equipment that are in violation of Section 2006.4.1 or 2006.4.2 shall be immediately defueled and removed from service and shall not be returned to service until proper repairs have been made.

2006.4.4 Operators. Aircraft-fueling vehicles that are operated by a person, firm or corporation other than the permittee or the permittee's authorized employee shall be provided with a legible sign visible from outside the vehicle showing the name of the person, firm or corporation operating such unit.

2006.5 Fueling and defueling. Aircraft-fueling and defueling operations shall be in accordance with Sections 2006.5.1 through 2006.5.5.

2006.5.1 Positioning of aircraft-fueling vehicles. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall not be located, parked or permitted to stand in a position where such unit would obstruct egress from an aircraft should a fire occur during fuel-transfer operations. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall not be located, parked or permitted to stand under any portion of an aircraft.

Exception: Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall be allowed to be located under aircraft wings during underwing fueling of turbine-engine powered aircraft.

2006.5.1.1 Fueling vehicle egress. A clear path shall be maintained for aircraft-fueling vehicles to provide for prompt and timely egress from the fueling area.

2006.5.1.2 Aircraft vent openings. A clear space of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be maintained between aircraft fuel-system vent openings and any part or portion of an aircraft-fueling vehicle.

2006.5.1.3 Parking. Prior to leaving the cab, the aircraft-fueling vehicle operator shall ensure that the parking brake has been set. Not less than two chock blocks not less than 5 inches by 5 inches by 12 inches (127 mm by 127 mm by 305 mm) in size and dished to fit the contour of the tires shall be utilized and positioned in such a manner as to preclude movement of the vehicle in any direction.

2006.5.2 Electrical bonding. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall be electrically bonded to the aircraft being fueled or defueled. Bonding connections shall be made prior to making fueling connections and shall not be disconnected until the fuel-transfer operations are completed and the fueling connections have been removed.

Where a hydrant service vehicle or cart is used for fueling, the hydrant coupler shall be connected to the hydrant system prior to bonding the fueling equipment to the aircraft.

2006.5.2.1 Conductive hose. In addition to the bonding cable required by Section 2006.5.2, conductive hose shall be used for all fueling operations.

2006.5.2.2 Bonding conductors on transfer nozzles. Transfer nozzles shall be equipped with approved bonding conductors that shall be clipped or otherwise positively engaged with the bonding attachment provided on the aircraft adjacent to the fuel tank cap prior to removal of the cap.

Exception: In the case of overwing fueling where an appropriate bonding attachment adjacent to the fuel fill port has not been provided on the aircraft, the fueling operator

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

shall touch the fuel tank cap with the nozzle spout prior to removal of the cap. The nozzle shall be kept in contact with the fill port until fueling is completed.

2006.5.2.3 Funnels. Where required, metal funnels are allowed to be used during fueling operations. Direct contact between the fueling receptacle, the funnel and the fueling nozzle shall be maintained during the fueling operation.

2006.5.3 Training. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall be attended and operated only by persons instructed in methods of proper use and operation and who are qualified to use such fueling vehicles in accordance with minimum safety requirements.

2006.5.3.1 Fueling hazards. Fuel-servicing personnel shall know and understand the hazards associated with each type of fuel dispensed by the airport fueling-system operator.

2006.5.3.2 Fire safety training. Employees of fuel agents who fuel aircraft, accept fuel shipments or otherwise handle fuel shall receive approved fire safety training.

2006.5.3.2.1 Fire extinguisher training. Fuel-servicing personnel shall receive approved training in the operation of fire-extinguishing equipment.

2006.5.3.2.2 Records. The airport fueling-system operator shall maintain records of all training administered to its employees.

2006.5.4 Transfer personnel. During fuel-transfer operations, a qualified person shall be in control of each transfer nozzle and another qualified person shall be in immediate control of the fuel-pumping equipment to shut off or otherwise control the flow of fuel from the time fueling operations are begun until they are completed.

Exceptions:

1. For underwing refueling, the person stationed at the point of fuel intake is not required.

2. For overwing refueling, the person stationed at the fuel pumping equipment shall not be required where the person at the fuel dispensing device is within 75 feet (22 800 mm) of the emergency shutoff device; is not on the wing of the aircraft and has a clear and unencumbered path to the fuel pumping equipment; and the fuel dispensing line does not exceed 50 feet (15 240 mm) in length.

The fueling operator shall monitor the panel of the fueling equipment and the aircraft control panel during pressure fueling or shall monitor the fill port during overwing fueling.

2006.5.5 Fuel flow control. Fuel flow-control valves shall be operable only by the direct hand pressure of the operator. Removal of the operator's hand pressure shall cause an immediate cessation of the flow of fuel.

2006.6 Emergency fuel shutoff. Emergency fuel shutoff controls and procedures shall comply with Sections 2006.6.1 through 2006.6.4.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2006.6.1 Controls. Emergency fuel shutoff controls shall be provided with ready access at all times when the fueling system is being operated.

2006.6.2 Notification of the fire department. The fueling-system operator shall establish a procedure by which the fire department will be notified in the event of an activation of an emergency fuel shutoff control.

2006.6.3 Determining cause. Prior to reestablishment of normal fuel flow, the cause of fuel shutoff conditions shall be determined and corrected.

2006.6.4 Testing. Emergency fuel shutoff devices shall be operationally tested at intervals not exceeding three months. The fueling-system operator shall maintain testing records.

2006.7 Protection of hoses. Before an aircraft-fueling vehicle is moved, fuel-transfer hoses shall be properly placed on the approved reel or in the compartment provided or stored on the top decking of the fueling vehicle if proper height rail is provided for security and protection of such equipment. Fuel-transfer hose shall not be looped or draped over any part of the fueling vehicle, except as herein provided. Fuel-transfer hose shall not be dragged when such fueling vehicle is moved from one fueling position to another.

2006.8 Loading and unloading. Aircraft-fueling vehicles shall be loaded only at an approved loading rack. Such loading racks shall be in accordance with Section 5706.5.1.12.

Exceptions:

1. Aircraft-refueling units are allowed to be loaded from the fuel tanks of an aircraft during defueling operations.

2. Fuel transfer between tank vehicles is allowed to be performed in accordance with Section 5706.6 where the operation is not less than 200 feet (60 960 mm) from an aircraft.

The fuel cargo of such units shall be unloaded only by approved transfer apparatus into the fuel tanks of aircraft, underground storage tanks or approved gravity storage tanks.

2006.9 Passengers. Passenger traffic is allowed during the time fuel transfer operations are in progress, provided that the following provisions are strictly enforced by the owner of the aircraft or the owner's authorized employee:

1. Smoking and producing an open flame in the cabin of the aircraft or the outside thereof within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of such aircraft shall be prohibited.

   A qualified employee of the aircraft owner shall be responsible for seeing that the passengers are not allowed to smoke when remaining aboard the aircraft or while going across the ramp from the gate to such aircraft, or vice versa.

2. Passengers shall not be permitted to linger about the plane but shall proceed directly between the loading gate and the aircraft.

3. Passenger loading stands or walkways shall be left in loading position until all fuel-transfer operations are completed.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

4. Fuel transfer operations shall not be performed on the main exit side of any aircraft containing passengers except when the owner of such aircraft or a capable and qualified employee of such owner remains inside the aircraft to direct and assist the escape of such passengers through regular and emergency exits in the event fire should occur during fuel transfer operations.

2006.10 Sources of ignition. Smoking and producing open flames within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of a point where fuel is being transferred shall be prohibited. Electrical and motor-driven devices shall not be connected to or disconnected from an aircraft at any time fueling operations are in progress on such aircraft.

2006.11 Fuel spill prevention and procedures. Fuel spill prevention and the procedures for handling spills shall comply with Sections 2006.11.1 through 2006.11.7.

2006.11.1 Fuel-servicing equipment maintenance. Aircraft fuel-servicing equipment shall be maintained and kept free from leaks. Fuel-servicing equipment that malfunctions or leaks shall not be continued in service.

2006.11.2 Transporting fuel nozzles. Fuel nozzles shall be carried utilizing appropriate handles. Dragging fuel nozzles along the ground shall be prohibited.

2006.11.3 Drum fueling. Fueling from drums or other containers having a capacity greater than 5 gallons (19 L) shall be accomplished with the use of an approved pump.

2006.11.4 Fuel spill procedures. The fueling-system operator shall establish procedures to follow in the event of a fuel spill. These procedures shall be comprehensive and shall provide for all of the following:

1. Upon observation of a fuel spill, the aircraft-fueling operator shall immediately stop the delivery of fuel by releasing hand pressure from the fuel flow-control valve.

2. Failure of the fuel control valve to stop the continued spillage of fuel shall be cause for the activation of the appropriate emergency fuel shutoff device.

3. A supervisor for the fueling-system operator shall respond to the fuel spill area immediately.

2006.11.5 Notification of the fire department. The fire department shall be notified of any fuel spill that is considered a hazard to people or property or which meets one or more of the following criteria:

1. Any dimension of the spill is greater than 10 feet (3048 mm).

2. The spill area is greater than 50 square feet (4.65 m^2).

3. The fuel flow is continuous in nature.

2006.11.6 Investigation required. An investigation shall be conducted by the fueling-system operator of all spills requiring notification of the fire department. The investigation shall provide conclusive proof of the cause and verification of the appropriate use of emergency

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

procedures. Where it is determined that corrective measures are necessary to prevent future incidents of the same nature, they shall be implemented immediately.

2006.11.7 Multiple fuel delivery vehicles. Simultaneous delivery of fuel from more than one aircraft-fueling vehicle to a single aircraft-fueling manifold is prohibited unless proper backflow prevention devices are installed to prevent fuel flow into the tank vehicles.

2006.12 Aircraft engines and heaters. Operation of aircraft onboard engines and combustion heaters shall be terminated prior to commencing fuel-servicing operations and shall remain off until the fuel-servicing operation is completed.

Exception: In an emergency, a single jet engine is allowed to be operated during fuel servicing where all of the following conditions are met:

1. The emergency shall have resulted from an onboard failure of the aircraft's auxiliary power unit.
2. Restoration of auxiliary power to the aircraft by ground support services is not available.
3. The engine to be operated is either at the rear of the aircraft or on the opposite side of the aircraft from the fuel-servicing operation.
4. The emergency operation is in accordance with a written procedure approved by the fire code official.

2006.13 Vehicle and equipment restrictions. During aircraft-fueling operations, only the equipment actively involved in the fueling operation is allowed within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the aircraft being fueled. Other equipment shall be prohibited in this area until the fueling operation is complete.

A clear space of not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be maintained between aircraft fuel-system vent openings and any part or portion of aircraft-servicing vehicles or equipment.

Exception: Aircraft-fueling operations utilizing single-point refueling with a sealed, mechanically locked fuel line connection and the fuel is not a Class I flammable liquid.

2006.13.1 Overwing fueling. Vehicles or equipment shall not be allowed beneath the trailing edge of the wing when aircraft fueling takes place over the wing and the aircraft fuel-system vents are located on the upper surface of the wing.

2006.14 Electrical equipment. Electrical equipment, including but not limited to, battery chargers, ground or auxiliary power units, fans, compressors or tools, shall not be operated, nor shall they be connected or disconnected from their power source, during fuel-servicing operations.

2006.14.1 Other equipment. Electrical or other spark-producing equipment shall not be used within 10 feet (3048 mm) of fueling equipment, aircraft fill or vent points, or spill areas unless that equipment is intrinsically safe and approved for use in an explosive atmosphere.

2006.15 Open flames. Open flames and open-flame devices are prohibited within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of any aircraft fuel-servicing operation or fueling equipment.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2006.15.1 Other areas. The fire code official is authorized to establish other locations where open flames and open-flame devices are prohibited.

2006.15.2 Matches and lighters. Personnel assigned to and engaged in fuel-servicing operations shall not carry matches or lighters on or about their person. Matches or lighters shall be prohibited in, on or about aircraft-fueling equipment.

2006.16 Lightning procedures. The fire code official is authorized to require the airport authority and the fueling-system operator to establish written procedures to follow when lightning flashes are detected on or near the airport. These procedures shall establish criteria for the suspension and resumption of aircraft-fueling operations.

2006.17 Fuel-transfer locations. Aircraft fuel-transfer operations shall be prohibited indoors.

Exception: In aircraft hangars built in accordance with the provisions of the *building code* for Group F-1 occupancies, aircraft fuel-transfer operations are allowed where either of the following conditions exist:

1. Necessary to accomplish aircraft fuel-system maintenance operations. Such operations shall be performed in accordance with nationally recognized standards.

2. The fuel being used has a flash point greater than 100°F (37.8°C).

2006.17.1 Position of aircraft. Aircraft being fueled shall be positioned such that any fuel system vents and other fuel tank openings are not less than:

1. Twenty-five feet (7620 mm) from buildings or structures other than jet bridges.

2. Fifty feet (15 240 mm) from air intake vents for boiler, heater or incinerator rooms.

2006.17.2 Fire equipment access. Access for fire service equipment to aircraft shall be maintained during fuel-servicing operations.

2006.18 Defueling operations. The requirements for fueling operations contained in this section shall also apply to aircraft defueling operations. Additional procedures shall be established by the fueling-system operator to prevent overfilling of the tank vehicle used in the defueling operation.

2006.19 Maintenance of aircraft-fueling hose. Aircraft-fueling hoses shall be maintained in accordance with Sections 2006.19.1 through 2006.19.4.

2006.19.1 Inspections. Hoses used to fuel or defuel aircraft shall be inspected periodically to ensure their serviceability and suitability for continued service. The fuel service operator shall maintain records of all tests and inspections performed on fueling hoses. Hoses found to be defective or otherwise damaged shall be immediately removed from service.

2006.19.1.1 Daily inspection. Each hose shall be inspected daily. This inspection shall include a complete visual scan of the exterior for evidence of damage, blistering or leakage. Each coupling shall be inspected for evidence of leaks, slippage or misalignment.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2006.19.1.2 Monthly inspection. A more thorough inspection, including pressure testing, shall be accomplished for each hose on a monthly basis. This inspection shall include examination of the fuel delivery inlet screen for rubber particles, which indicates problems with the hose lining.

2006.19.2 Damaged hose. Hose that has been subjected to severe abuse shall be immediately removed from service. Such hoses shall be hydrostatically tested prior to being returned to service.

2006.19.3 Repairing hose. Hoses are allowed to be repaired by removing the damaged portion and recoupling the undamaged end. When recoupling hoses, only couplings designed and approved for the size and type of hose in question shall be used. Hoses repaired in this manner shall be visually inspected and hydrostatically tested prior to being placed back in service.

2006.19.4 New hose. New hose shall be visually inspected prior to being placed into service.

2006.20 Aircraft fuel-servicing vehicles parking. Unattended aircraft fuel-servicing vehicles shall be parked in areas that provide for both the unencumbered dispersal of vehicles in the event of an emergency and the control of leakage such that adjacent buildings and storm drains are not contaminated by leaking fuel.

2006.20.1 Parking area design. Parking areas for tank vehicles shall be designed and utilized such that a clearance of 10 feet (3048 mm) is maintained between each parked vehicle for fire department access. In addition, a minimum clearance of 50 feet (15 240 mm) shall be maintained between tank vehicles and parked aircraft and structures other than those used for the maintenance or garaging of aircraft fuel-servicing vehicles.

2006.21 Radar equipment. Aircraft fuel-servicing operations shall be prohibited while the weather-mapping radar of that aircraft is operating.

Aircraft fuel-servicing or other operations in which flammable liquids, vapors or mists could be present shall not be conducted within 300 feet (91 440 mm) of an operating aircraft surveillance radar.

Aircraft fuel-servicing operations shall not be conducted within 300 feet (91 440 mm) of airport flight traffic surveillance radar equipment.

Aircraft fuel-servicing or other operations in which flammable liquids, vapors or mists could be present shall not be conducted within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of airport ground traffic surveillance radar equipment.

2006.21.1 Direction of radar beams. The beam from ground radar equipment shall not be directed toward fuel storage or loading racks.

Exceptions:

1. Fuel storage and loading racks in excess of 300 feet (91 440 mm) from airport flight traffic surveillance equipment.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2. Fuel storage and loading racks in excess of 100 feet (30 480 mm) from airport ground traffic surveillance equipment.

Section 2007 Helistops and heliports

2007.1 General. Helistops and heliports shall be maintained in accordance with Sections 2007.2 through 2007.8. Helistops and heliports on buildings shall be constructed in accordance with the *building code*.

2007.2 Clearances. The touchdown area shall be surrounded on all sides by a clear area having minimum average width at roof level of 15 feet (4572 mm) and not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) at any point. The clear area shall be maintained.

2007.3 Flammable and Class II combustible liquid spillage. Landing areas on structures shall be maintained so as to confine flammable or Class II combustible liquid spillage to the landing area itself, and provisions shall be made to drain such spillage away from exits or stairways serving the helicopter landing area or from a structure housing such exit or stairway.

2007.4 Exits. Exits and stairways shall be maintained in accordance with Section 412.7 of the *building code*.

2007.5 Standpipe systems. A building with a rooftop helistop or heliport shall be provided with a Class I or III standpipe system extended to the roof level on which the helistop or heliport is located. All portions of the helistop and heliport area shall be within 150 feet (45 720 mm) of a 2½-inch (63.5 mm) outlet on the standpipe system.

2007.6 Foam protection. Foam fire-protection capabilities shall be provided for rooftop heliports. Such systems shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with the applicable provisions of Sections 903, 904 and 905.

2007.7 Fire extinguishers. Not less than one portable fire extinguisher having a minimum 80-B:C rating shall be provided for each permanent takeoff and landing area and for the aircraft parking areas. Installation, inspection and maintenance of these extinguishers shall be in accordance with Section 906.

2007.8 Federal approval. Before operating helicopters from helistops and heliports, approval shall be obtained from the Federal Aviation Administration.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

1301:7-7-21 Dry cleaning.

Section 2101 General

2101.1 Scope. Dry cleaning plants and their operations shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

2101.2 Permit required. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

Section 2102 Definitions

2102.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

Dry cleaning.

Dry cleaning plant.

Dry cleaning room.

Dry cleaning system.

Solvent or liquid classifications.

Class I solvents.

Class II solvents.

Class IIIA solvents.

Class IIIB solvents.

Class IV solvents.

Section 2103 Classifications

2103.1 Solvent classification. Dry cleaning solvents shall be classified according to their flash points as follows:

1. Class I solvents are liquids having a flash point below 100°F (38°C).
2. Class II solvents are liquids having a flash point at or above 100°F (38°C) and below 140°F (60°C).
3. Class IIIA solvents are liquids having a flash point at or above 140°F (60°C) and below 200°F (93°C).
4. Class IIIB solvents are liquids having a flash point at or above 200°F (93°C).
5. Class IV solvents are liquids classified as nonflammable.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2103.2 Classification of dry cleaning plants and systems. Dry cleaning plants and systems shall be classified based on the solvents used as follows:

1. Type I-systems using Class I solvents.
2. Type II-systems using Class II solvents.
3. Type III-A-systems using Class IIIA solvents.
4. Type III-B-systems using Class IIIB solvents.
5. Type IV-systems using Class IV solvents in which dry cleaning is not conducted by the public.
6. Type V-systems using Class IV solvents in which dry cleaning is conducted by the public.

Spotting and pretreating operations conducted in accordance with Section 2106 shall not change the type of the dry cleaning plant.

2103.2.1 Multiple solvents. Dry cleaning plants using more than one class of solvent for dry cleaning shall be classified based on the numerically lowest solvent class.

2103.3 Design. The occupancy classification, design and construction of dry cleaning plants shall comply with the applicable requirements of the *building code*.

Section 2104 General requirements

2104.1 Prohibited use. Type I dry cleaning plants shall be prohibited. Limited quantities of Class I solvents stored and used in accordance with this section shall not be prohibited in dry cleaning plants.

2104.2 Building services. Building services and systems shall be designed, installed and maintained in accordance with this section and Chapter 6.

2104.2.1 Ventilation. Ventilation shall be provided in accordance with Section 502 of the *mechanical code* and DOL 29 CFR Part 1910.1000, where applicable.

2104.2.2 Heating. In Type II dry cleaning plants, heating shall be by indirect means using steam, hot water or hot oil only.

2104.2.3 Electrical wiring and equipment. Electrical wiring and equipment in dry cleaning rooms or other locations subject to flammable vapors shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70.

2104.2.4 Bonding and grounding. Storage tanks, treatment tanks, filters, pumps, piping, ducts, dry cleaning units, stills, tumblers, drying cabinets and other such equipment, where not inherently electrically conductive, shall be bonded together and grounded. Isolated equipment shall be grounded.

Section 2105 Operating requirements

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2105.1 General. The operation of dry cleaning systems shall comply with the requirements of Sections 2105.1.1 through 2105.3.

2105.1.1 Written instructions. Written instructions covering the proper installation and safe operation and use of equipment and solvent shall be given to the buyer.

2105.1.1.1 Type II, III-A, III-B and IV systems. In Type II, III-A, III-B and IV dry cleaning systems, machines shall be operated in accordance with the operating instructions furnished by the machinery manufacturer. Employees shall be instructed as to the hazards involved in their departments and in the work they perform.

2105.1.1.2 Type V systems. Operating instructions for customer use of Type V dry cleaning systems shall be conspicuously posted in a location near the dry cleaning unit. A telephone number shall be provided for emergency assistance.

2105.1.2 Equipment identification. The manufacturer shall provide nameplates on dry cleaning machines indicating the class of solvent for which each machine is designed.

2105.1.3 Open systems prohibited. Dry cleaning by immersion and agitation in open vessels shall be prohibited.

2105.1.4 Prohibited use of solvent. The use of solvents with a flash point below that for which a machine is designed or listed shall be prohibited.

2105.1.5 Equipment maintenance and housekeeping. Proper maintenance and operating practices shall be observed in order to prevent the leakage of solvent or the accumulation of lint. The handling of waste material generated by dry cleaning operations and the maintenance of facilities shall comply with the provisions of this section.

2105.1.5.1 Floors. Class I and II liquids shall not be used for cleaning floors.

2105.1.5.2 Filters. Filter residue and other residues containing solvent shall be handled and disposed of in covered metal containers.

2105.1.5.3 Lint. Lint and refuse shall be removed from traps daily, deposited in approved waste cans, removed from the premises, and disposed of safely. At all other times, traps shall be held securely in place.

2105.1.5.4 Customer areas. In Type V dry cleaning systems, customer areas shall be kept clean.

2105.2 Type II systems. Special operating requirements for Type II dry cleaning systems shall comply with the provisions of Sections 2105.2.1 through 2105.2.3.

2105.2.1 Inspection of materials. Materials to be dry cleaned shall be searched thoroughly and foreign materials, including matches and metallic substances, shall be removed.

2105.2.2 Material transfer. In removing materials from the washer, provisions shall be made for minimizing the dripping of solvent on the floor. Where materials are transferred from a washer to a drain tub, a nonferrous metal drip apron shall be placed so that the apron rests on the drain tub and the cylinder of the washer.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2105.2.3 Ventilation. A mechanical ventilation system that is designed to exhaust 1 cubic foot of air per minute for each square foot of floor area [0.0058 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] shall be installed in dry cleaning rooms and in drying rooms. The ventilation system shall operate automatically when the dry cleaning equipment is in operation and shall have manual controls at an approved location.

2105.3 Type IV and V systems. Type IV and V dry cleaning systems shall be provided with an automatically activated exhaust ventilation system to maintain an air velocity of not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s) through the loading door when the door is opened. Such systems for dry cleaning equipment shall comply with the *mechanical code*.

Exception: Dry cleaning units are not required to be provided with exhaust ventilation where an exhaust hood is installed immediately outside of and above the loading door and operates at an airflow rate as follows:

$Q = 100 \times A_{LD}$ **(Equation 21-1)**

where:

Q = flow rate exhausted through the hood, cubic feet per minute (m^3/s).

A_{LD} = area of the loading door, square feet (m^2).

Section 2106 Spotting and pretreating

2106.1 General. Spotting and pretreating operations and equipment shall comply with the provisions of Sections 2106.2 through 2106.5.

2106.2 Class I solvents. The maximum quantity of Class I solvents permitted at any work station shall be 1 gallon (4 L). Spotting or prespotting shall be permitted to be conducted with Class I solvents where they are stored in and dispensed from approved safety cans or in sealed DOT-approved metal shipping containers of not more than 1-gallon (4 L) capacity.

2106.2.1 Spotting and prespotting. Spotting and prespotting shall be permitted to be conducted with Class I solvents where dispensed from plastic containers of not more than 1-pint (0.5 L) capacity.

2106.3 Class II and III solvents. Scouring, brushing, and spotting and pretreating shall be permitted to be conducted with Class II or III solvents. The maximum quantity of Class II or III solvents permitted at any work station shall be 1 gallon (4 L). In other than Group H-2 occupancy, the aggregate quantities of solvents shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantity per control area for use-open system.

2106.3.1 Spotting tables. Scouring, brushing or spotting tables on which articles are soaked in solvent shall have a liquid-tight top with a curb on all sides not less than 1 inch (25 mm) high. The top of the table shall be pitched to ensure thorough draining to a 1½ - inch (38 mm) drain connected to an approved container.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2106.3.2 Special handling. Where approved, articles that cannot be washed in the usual washing machines are allowed to be cleaned in scrubbing tubs. Scrubbing tubs shall comply with the following:

1. Only Class II or III liquids shall be used.

2. The total amount of solvent used in such open containers shall not exceed 3 gallons (11 L).

3. Scrubbing tubs shall be secured to the floor.

4. Scrubbing tubs shall be provided with permanent 1½ - inch (38 mm) drains. Such drain shall be provided with a trap and shall be connected to an approved container.

2106.3.3 Ventilation. Scrubbing tubs, scouring, brushing or spotting operations shall be located such that solvent vapors are captured and exhausted by the ventilating system.

2106.3.4 Bonding and grounding. Metal scouring, brushing and spotting tables and scrubbing tubs shall be permanently and effectively bonded and grounded.

2106.4 Type IV systems. Flammable and combustible liquids used for spotting operations shall be stored in approved safety cans or in sealed DOTn-approved shipping containers of not more than 1 gallon (4 L) in capacity. Aggregate amounts shall not exceed 10 gallons (38 L).

2106.5 Type V systems. Spotting operations using flammable or combustible liquids are prohibited in Type V dry cleaning systems.

Section 2107 Dry cleaning systems

2107.1 General equipment requirements. Dry cleaning systems, including dry cleaning units, washing machines, stills, drying cabinets, tumblers and their appurtenances, including pumps, piping, valves, filters and solvent coolers, shall be installed and maintained in accordance with NFPA 32. The construction of buildings in which such systems are located shall comply with the requirements of this section and the *building code*.

2107.2 Type II systems. Type II dry cleaning and solvent tank storage rooms shall not be located below grade or above the lowest floor level of the building and shall comply with Sections 2107.2.1 through 2107.2.3.

Exception: Solvent storage tanks installed underground, in vaults or in special enclosures in accordance with Chapter 57.

2107.2.1 Fire-fighting access. Type II dry cleaning plants shall be located so that access is provided and maintained from one side for fire-fighting and fire control purposes in accordance with Section 503.

2107.2.2 Number of means of egress. Type II dry cleaning rooms shall have not less than two means of egress doors located at opposite ends of the room, not less than one of which shall lead directly to the outside.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2107.2.3 Spill control and secondary containment. Curbs, drains or other provisions for spill control and secondary containment shall be provided in accordance with Section 5004.2 to collect solvent leakage and fire protection water and direct it to a safe location.

2107.3 Solvent storage tanks. Solvent storage tanks for Class II, IIIA and IIIB liquids shall conform to the requirements of Chapter 57 and be located underground or outside, above ground.

Exception: As provided in NFPA 32 for inside storage or treatment tanks.

Section 2108 Fire protection

2108.1 General. Where required by this section, fire protection systems, devices and equipment shall be installed, inspected, tested and maintained in accordance with Chapter 9.

2108.2 Automatic sprinkler system. An automatic sprinkler system shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 throughout dry cleaning plants containing Type II, Type III-A or Type III-B dry cleaning systems.

Exceptions:

1. An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in Type III-A dry cleaning plants where the aggregate quantity of Class III-A solvent in dry cleaning machines and storage does not exceed 330 gallons (1250 L) and dry cleaning machines are equipped with a feature that will accomplish any one of the following:

   1.1 Prevent oxygen concentrations from reaching 8 percent or more by volume.

   1.2 Keep the temperature of the solvent not less than 30°F (16.7°C) below the flash point.

   1.3 Maintain the solvent vapor concentration at a level lower than 25 percent of the lower explosive limit (LEL).

   1.4 Utilize equipment approved for use in Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations in accordance with NFPA 70.

   1.5 Utilize an integrated dry-chemical, clean agent or water-mist automatic fire-extinguishing system designed in accordance with Chapter 9.

2. An automatic sprinkler system shall not be required in Type III-B dry cleaning plants where the aggregate quantity of Class III-B solvent in dry cleaning machines and storage does not exceed 3,300 gallons (12 490 L).

2108.3 Automatic fire-extinguishing systems. Type II dry cleaning units, washer-extractors, and drying tumblers in Type II dry cleaning plants shall be provided with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system installed and maintained in accordance with Chapter 9.

Exception: Where approved, a manual steam jet not less than ¾ inch (19 mm) with a continuously available steam supply at a pressure not less than 15 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (103 kPa) is allowed to be substituted for the automatic fire-extinguishing system.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2108.4 Portable fire extinguishers. Portable fire extinguishers shall be selected, installed and maintained in accordance with this section and Section 906. Not fewer than two 2-A:10-B:C portable fire extinguishers shall be provided near the doors inside dry cleaning rooms containing Type II, Type III-A and Type III-B dry cleaning systems.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

1301:7-7-22 Combustible dust-producing operations.

Section 2201 General

2201.1 Scope. The equipment, processes and operations involving dust explosion hazards and use or handling of combustible dust shall comply with the provisions of this chapter.

Exceptions:

1. Storage and use of consumer materials in Group B or R occupancies.
2. Storage and use of commercially packaged materials in Group M occupancies.
3. Materials displayed in original packaging in Group M occupancies and intended as building materials or for personal or household use.
4. Storage of sealed containers of combustible dust at facilities not associated with an operation that uses, handles or generates combustible dust.
5. Materials stored or used in farm buildings or similar occupancies intended for on-premises agricultural purposes.

2201.2 Permits. Permits shall be required for combustible dust-producing operations as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

Section 2202 Definitions

2202.1 Definition. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

Combustible dust.

Dust collection system.

Section 2203 Dust explosion prevention

2203.1 Critical depth layer. The maximum dust layer on all surfaces, including but not limited to walls, ceilings, beams, equipment, furniture, pipes and ducts, shall not exceed the critical depth layer specified in Table 2203.1. The critical depth layer is permitted to be adjusted for explosion hazard where further evaluated in accordance with one of the following:

1. Section 7.2.1.3 of NFPA 654.
2. Section 1.3.3 of NFPA 664 for wood flour.

Accumulated combustible dust shall be collected by one of the methods listed in Section 2203.5.

Table 2203.1
Critical depth layer

Type of dust	Critical depth layer (inches)
Wood flour	1/8

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

All other dusts	1/32

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm.

2203.2 Dust-producing and dust-handling equipment. Dust-producing equipment and dust-handling equipment, including but not limited to vacuums, dust collection systems, dryers, mixers, blenders, separators, conveyors, storage containers, silos or other similar devices, shall be listed and shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's recommended standards.

2203.2.1 Signages and markings. Signages and markings shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2203.2.1.1 through 2203.2.1.3.

2203.2.1.1 Deflagration vent discharge area markings. Where dust collection systems and other equipment, systems or system components are provided with deflagration vents, the area within the deflagration vent's discharge area shall be marked in an approved manner.

2203.2.1.2 Caution signs. Signs that read as follows shall be posted near the dust-containing equipment with deflagration vents:

CAUTION: THIS EQUIPMENT CAN CONTAIN EXPLOSIVE DUST.
KEEP OUTSIDE THE MARKED AREA WHILE EQUIPMENT IS OPERATING.

2203.2.1.3 Warning signs. Where dust collection systems and other equipment, systems or system components are provided with deflagration vents, vent closures shall be clearly marked as follows:

WARNING: EXPLOSION RELIEF DEVICE.
STAY CLEAR.

2203.3 Dust-collection and dust-conveying systems. Dust-collection and dust-conveying systems shall be in accordance with Sections 2203.3.1 through 2203.3.3.

2203.3.1 Dust-collection systems. Dust -collection systems shall be designed to collect dust emissions from dust-producing equipment at the point of generation. Dust-collection systems shall be in accordance with Section 511 of the *mechanical code*.

Exception: Closed systems using listed equipment and designed in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations and specifications, where cleanouts are provided in accordance with Section 2203.3.3.

Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) systems shall not be used as the means to collect dusts from localized sources.

2203.3.1.1 Location. Dust collectors shall be located outside of buildings.

Exceptions:

1. Dust collectors inside buildings complying with Section 511 of the *mechanical code*.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2. Wet-type dust collectors specifically listed for the type of dust conveyed shall be permitted inside buildings where in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and specifications.

3. Dust collectors designed to specific NFPA standards listed in Table 2205.1 for the specific type of dust conveyed.

2203.3.1.2 Minimum conveying velocities. The minimum velocities within ducts used as part of the dust collection system shall be in accordance with Table 2203.3.1.2.

Table 2203.3.1.2
Minimum conveying velocities

Type of product	Feet per minute
Fine light dust such as cotton, lint and wood flour (100 mesh and under)	2,000
Dry dust such as fine rubber molding powder	2,500
Average dust such as sawdust, grinding dust and coal dust	3,500
Heavy dust such as metal turnings, including aluminum and magnesium powder	4,000

For SI: 1 foot per minute = 0.00508 m/s.

2203.3.2 Plastic ducts and conveying systems. Plastic, fiberglass, other nonconductive ducts, duct liners or pipes shall not be used as part of ducts and conveying systems. Ductwork utilizing a combustible lining shall be permitted only in high-impact areas and where approved. Flexible hose shall be permitted if designed and installed in accordance with the following requirements:

1. Manufactured of static dissipative construction.

2. Used only for connections and isolation purposes.

3. Limited to 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

4. Properly grounded.

2203.3.3 Cleanouts. Openings in enclosed equipment and conveyors shall be provided to allow access to all parts of the equipment and conveyors to permit inspection, cleaning, maintenance and the effective use of portable fire extinguishers or hose streams. Cleanouts for ducts used as part of the dust-collection system shall be in accordance with the *mechanical code*.

2203.4 Sources of ignition. Sources of ignition shall be controlled in accordance with Sections 2203.4.1 through 2203.4.9.5.

2203.4.1 Classified electrical. Classified electrical shall be in accordance with NFPA 70. Electrical motors and electrical components of the equipment shall not be installed in the dust-laden airstream unless listed for Class II, Division 1, locations.

2203.4.2 Static electricity. Bonding and grounding is required to minimize accumulation of static electric charge in the following locations:

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1. Dust-producing equipment.

2. Dust-collection system.

3. Pneumatic dust-conveying systems conveying combustible dust from one location to another, combustible dust conveyors, piping and conductive components. Conveying systems include transport modes such as railcars, hopper cars, boxcars, tank cars and trucks into which or from which commodities or products are pneumatically conveyed.

4. Conveying systems using metallic piping.

2203.4.3 Hot works. Hot work and similar spark-producing operations shall not be conducted in or adjacent to combustible dust-producing areas unless precautions have been taken to provide safety. Hot work shall be permitted only in safe, designated areas in accordance with Chapter 35. Hot work is prohibited on equipment that is operating.

2203.4.3.1 Signs. Conspicuous signs with the following warning shall be posted in the vicinity of combustible dust-producing areas or in the vicinity of combustible dust use:

NO WELDING.
THE USE OF WELDING OR CUTTING EQUIPMENT
IN OR NEAR THIS AREA IS DANGEROUS
BECAUSE OF FIRE AND EXPLOSION HAZARDS.

WELDING AND CUTTING SHALL BE DONE ONLY
UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF THE PERSON IN CHARGE.

2203.4.4 Hot surfaces and hot equipment. In areas where a dust explosion hazard or dust flash fire hazard exists, the temperature (in degrees Celsius) of external surfaces shall be maintained below 80 percent of the lower of the dust surface ignition temperature or the dust-cloud ignition temperature for worst-case dusts. External surfaces shall include but are not limited to:

1. Compressors.

2. Steam, water or process piping.

3. Ducts.

4. Conveyors.

5. Process equipment.

Where steam pipes or hot surfaces occur in dust-producing or dust-handling areas, accumulation of dust on the surfaces shall be minimized by an approved method.

Exception: Drying apparatus listed for the intended use and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2203.4.5 Powered industrial trucks. Powered industrial trucks used in electrically classified areas shall be listed for such use.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2203.4.6 Smoking prohibited. Smoking shall be prohibited in or adjacent to dust-producing or dust-handling areas. “No Smoking” signs complying with Section 310 shall be conspicuously posted in such areas. Smoking shall be permitted only in designated areas.

2203.4.7 Spark-producing devices. Spark-producing devices shall not be located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of areas requiring classified electrical unless separated by a permanent partition.

2203.4.8 Self-heating materials. Materials in silos and other large storage piles of particulates prone to self-heating shall be in accordance with Section 9.4.11 of NFPA 652.

2203.4.9 Open flames and fuel-fired equipment. Open flames and fuel-fired equipment shall be in accordance with Sections 2203.4.9.1 through 2203.4.9.5.

2203.4.9.1 Release of airborne combustible dust. Production, maintenance or repair activities that have the potential to release or force combustible dust to become airborne shall not be conducted within 35 feet (11 m) of an open flame or pilot flame.

2203.4.9.2 Space heaters. Fuel-fired space heaters drawing local ambient air shall not be located within electrically classified areas. Space-heating appliances in dust-producing or dust-handling areas shall be located where not subject to the accumulation of deposits of combustible dust.

2203.4.9.3 Equipment listing. Fuel-fired process equipment shall be listed for its intended use and shall be operated and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer’s instructions.

2203.4.9.4 Inspection and preventive maintenance. Inspection and maintenance of fuel-fired process equipment shall include verification that significant combustible dust accumulations do not exist within or around the equipment.

2203.4.9.5 Sources of combustion air. In Class II electrically classified locations, heating units shall be provided with a source of combustion air ducted directly from the building exterior or from an unclassified location.

2203.5 Housekeeping. Accumulation of combustible dust on surfaces inside buildings shall be maintained below the critical depth layer in Section 2203.1. Pressurized air or similar methods shall not be used to remove dust from surfaces. Accumulated combustible dust shall be collected by one of the following methods:

1. Portable vacuum cleaners listed for use in Class II, Group G, Division 1, atmospheres as defined in NFPA 70.

2. Dust collection systems.

3. Other approved means that will not place combustible dust into suspension in air.

Exception: Forced-air or similar methods shall be permitted to remove dust in accordance with NFPA 652, NFPA 654 or NFPA 664.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2203.6 Standard operational procedures. Dust-producing equipment and all associated equipment, including dust-collection equipment, shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and specifications and applicable codes. The inspection, testing and maintenance program shall include the following, as applicable:

1. Fire and explosion protection and prevention equipment, as applicable, in accordance with the appropriate NFPA standards.
2. Dust-control equipment.
3. Control of potential ignition sources.
4. Electrical, process and mechanical equipment, including applicable process interlocks.
5. Lubrication of bearings for dust-collection, dust-handling and dust-producing equipment.
6. Additional maintenance in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and specifications for dust-collection, dust-handling and dust-producing equipment.

Records shall be kept of maintenance and repairs performed. The standard operating procedures shall be submitted to the fire code official for review and approval. The written standard operating procedures shall be signed by the person responsible for facility operations.

2203.7 Emergency response plan. A written emergency response plan shall be developed for preventing, preparing for and responding to work-related emergencies, including but not limited to fire and explosion. The following information shall be developed into the plan:

1. Identification of dust hazards.
2. Identification and location of all utilities to affected areas.
3. Site plans or floor plans locating utility shutoff controls, including water, gas and power.
4. The potential for explosion.
5. Locations of fire-extinguishing equipment compatible with the hazards present.
6. Any additional information required by the fire code official.

2203.8 Training. The plans and procedures required in Sections 2203.5, 2203.6 and 2203.7 shall be approved by the fire code official. The plans and procedures shall be reviewed annually and updated as required by process changes. Initial and annual refresher training shall be provided to employees who are involved in operating, maintaining and supervising facilities that handle combustible dust. Initial and annual refresher training shall include:

1. Workplace hazards.
2. General orientation, plant diagrams and plant safety rules.
3. Process description or flowchart.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

4. Equipment operation, safe startup and shutdown, and response to hazard conditions or an incident.

5. The location and use of all related fire and explosion protection and prevention systems.

6. Equipment maintenance requirements and practices, including visual inspections of conveyors and ducts.

7. Housekeeping requirements, including the maintenance of the critical depth layer in Section 2203.1.

8. Emergency response plans as required in Section 2203.7.

The employer shall maintain records of initial and annual training and review.

Section 2204 Dust explosion screening tests

2204.1 Combustibility and explosivity tests. Where combustibility or explosivity screening tests are required to analyze the combustible dust as part of compliance with Section 104.8 and Section 414.1.3 of the *building code*, they shall be in accordance with Section 5.4 of NFPA 652.

2204.2 Samples. Representative samples for the screening test shall be obtained in accordance with Section 5.5 of NFPA 652.

Section 2205 Standards

2205.1 Specific hazards standards. The fire code official is authorized to enforce additional industry- or material-specific provisions of the codes and standards listed in Table 2205.1 to prevent and control dust explosions, as applicable.

Table 2205.1
Explosion protection standards

Standard	Subject
NFPA 61	Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Processing Facilities
NFPA 68	Standard on Explosion Protection by Deflagration Venting
NFPA 69	Standard on Explosion Prevention Systems
NFPA 70	National Electrical Code
NFPA 77	Recommended Practice on Static Electricity
NFPA 85	Boiler and Combustion System Hazards Code
NFPA 120	Standard for Fire Prevention and Control in Coal Mines
NFPA 484	Standard for Combustible Metals
NFPA 654	Standard for Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing,

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

	Processing and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids
NFPA 655	Standard for the Prevention of Sulfur Fires and Explosions
NFPA 664	Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities

2205.1.1 Dust hazard analysis. If a dust hazard analysis (DHA) is required by the fire code official for new or existing facilities and operations, it shall be in accordance with NFPA 652. The DHA for existing facilities shall be in accordance with Section 7.1.1 of NFPA 652.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

1301:7-7-23 Motor fuel-dispensing facilities and repair garages.

Section 2301 General

2301.1 Scope. Automotive motor fuel-dispensing facilities, marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities, fleet vehicle motor fuel-dispensing facilities, *service stations at bulk plants,* aircraft motor-vehicle fuel-dispensing facilities and repair garages shall be in accordance with this chapter*, NFPA 30, NFPA 30A*, the International Fuel Gas Code, the *building code*, and the *mechanical code*. Such operations shall include both those that are open to the public and private operations.

2301.1.1. *Notwithstanding Sections 102.1 and 102.2 and unless otherwise noted in this rule, the provisions of this rule shall not apply to facilities, equipment, structures or installations existing or approved for construction or installation prior to the effective date of this rule, except in those cases where the fire code official demonstrates by a preponderance of the evidence that the existing facility, equipment, structure or installation creates a distinct hazard to life or adjacent property.*

2301.2 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1. In accordance with Section 105.1.1, permits required for the installation, alteration, abandonment, removal or to place temporarily out of service a stationary flammable or combustible liquid storage tank shall be obtained from the fire marshal when such permits are required by this code and are not issued by another officer listed in Section 3737.14 of the Revised Code.*

Exception: *A stationary flammable or combustible liquid storage tank with a capacity of 1,100 gallons or less utilized for agricultural purposes.*

2301.3 Construction documents. Construction documents shall be submitted for review and approval prior to the installation or construction of motor fuel-dispensing facilities*, service stations at bulk plants* and repair garages in accordance with Section 106.1.

2301.4 Indoor motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities located inside buildings shall comply with the *building code* and NFPA 30A.

2301.4.1 Protection of floor openings in indoor motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Where motor fuel-dispensing facilities are located inside buildings and the dispensers are located above spaces within the building, openings beneath dispensers shall be sealed to prevent the flow of leaked fuel to lower building spaces.

2301.5 Electrical. Electrical wiring and equipment shall be suitable for the locations in which they are installed and shall comply with Section 603, NFPA 30A and NFPA 70.

2301.6 Heat-producing appliances. Heat-producing appliances shall be suitable for the locations in which they are installed and shall comply with NFPA 30A and the International Fuel Gas Code or the *mechanical code*.

Section 2302 Definitions

2302.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2:

Aircraft motor-vehicle fuel-dispensing facility.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Alcohol-blended fuels.

Automotive motor fuel-dispensing facility.

Dispensing device, overhead type.

Fleet vehicle motor fuel-dispensing facility.

Liquefied natural gas (LNG).

Marine motor fuel-dispensing facility.

Motor fuel-dispensing facility.

Repair garage.

Self-service motor fuel-dispensing facility.

2302.2 "Approved" as used in Chapter 23. *As used in this rule and notwithstanding the definition as set forth in Chapter 2, the term "approved", unless otherwise further specified or defined in this rule, means: listed, labeled or tested for the specified purpose and documented in research reports from an authoritative source listed in Section 118.2, or otherwise acceptable to the fire code official.*

Section 2303 Location of dispensing devices

2303.1 Location of dispensing devices. Dispensing devices shall be located as follows:

1. Ten feet (3048 mm) or more from lot lines.
2. Ten feet (3048 mm) or more from buildings having combustible exterior wall surfaces or buildings having noncombustible exterior wall surfaces that are not part of a 1-hour fire-resistance-rated assembly or buildings having combustible overhangs.

   Exception: Canopies constructed in accordance with the *building code* providing weather protection for the fuel islands.
3. Such that all portions of the vehicle being fueled will be on the premises of the motor fuel-dispensing facility.
4. Such that the nozzle, where the hose is fully extended, will not reach within 5 feet (1524 mm) of building openings.
5. Twenty feet (6096 mm) or more from fixed sources of ignition.
6. Such that fuel dispensing is in view of the attendant at attended self-service motor fuel-dispensing facilities, as required by Section 2304.2.4.

2303.2 Emergency disconnect switches. An approved emergency disconnect switch shall be provided at an approved location to stop the transfer of fuel to the fuel dispensers in the event of a fuel spill or other emergency. The emergency disconnect switch for exterior fuel dispensers

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

shall be provided with ready access and shall be located *outside and* within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of, but not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from, the fuel dispensers. For interior fuel-dispensing operations, the emergency disconnect switch shall be provided with ready access and be installed at an approved location. *Emergency disconnect switches* shall be distinctly labeled as: EMERGENCY FUEL SHUTOFF. Signs shall be provided in approved locations.

2303.2.1 Height. The height of the emergency disconnect switch shall be not less than 42 inches (1067 mm) and not more than 48 inches (1219 mm) measured vertically, from the floor level to the activating button.

Section 2304 Dispensing operations

2304.1 Supervision of dispensing. The dispensing of fuel at motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be conducted by a qualified attendant or shall be under the supervision of a qualified attendant at all times or shall be in accordance with Section 2304.3.

2304.2 Attended self-service motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Attended self-service motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Sections 2304.2.1 through 2304.2.11*, NFPA 30A as listed in division (A) of Section 3741.14 of the Revised Code, and the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 and any amendments thereto or standards as may be adopted by the state fire marshal pursuant to division (B) of Section 3741.14 of the Revised Code.* Attended self-service motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall have not less than one qualified attendant on duty while the facility is open for business. The attendant's primary function shall be to supervise, observe and control the dispensing of fuel. The attendant shall prevent the dispensing of fuel into containers that do not comply with Section 2304.4.1, control sources of ignition, give immediate attention to accidental spills or releases, and be prepared to use fire extinguishers.

2304.2.1 Special-type dispensers. *Special*-dispensing devices and systems such as, but not limited to, card- or coin-operated and remote-preset types, are allowed at *attended self-service* motor fuel-dispensing facilities provided that there is not less than one qualified attendant on duty while the facility is open to the public. Remote preset-type devices shall be set in the "off" position while not in use so that the dispenser cannot be activated without the knowledge of the attendant.

2304.2.2 Emergency controls. *Emergency* controls shall be provided in accordance with Section 2303.2.

2304.2.3 Operating instructions. *Signs providing* dispenser operating instructions shall be conspicuously posted in approved locations on every dispenser.

2304.2.4 Obstructions to view. The attendant shall have a direct line of sight to observe fuel-dispensing operations at all times. Obstructions shall not be placed between the dispensing area and the attendant.

Exception: Video monitoring systems shall be permitted to supplement direct line of sight supervision where approved by the fire code official.

2304.2.5 Communications. The attendant shall be able to communicate with persons in the dispensing area at all times. *A telephone or other* approved method of communicating with the fire department shall be provided for the attendant.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2304.2.6 Smoking prohibited. *Gasoline and other flammable or combustible liquids shall be dispensed only by a person who is not smoking or vaping. Smoking and vaping shall be prohibited in the dispensing area.*

2304.2.7 Signage. *A sign in block letters at least four inches in height shall be conspicuously displayed on each gasoline pump island where self-service is offered stating that it is a self-service island.*

2304.2.8 Signage material. *All signs required by Sections 2304.2.3, 2304.2.7 and 2304.3.5 shall be constructed of rigid, weather-resistant material.*

2304.2.9 Attendant training. *It shall be the responsibility of the operator of the motor fuel dispensing facility to see that all attendant employees are properly trained in handling emergencies of a flammable fuel type.*

2304.2.10 Codes and standards. *It shall be the responsibility of the operator of the motor fuel dispensing facility to see that all attendant employees read and be familiar with applicable codes and standards.*

2304.2.11 Dispensing devices. *Existing listed or labeled dispensing devices shall be permitted to be modified provided that the modifications made are "Listed by Report" by an approved testing laboratory or as otherwise approved by the fire code official. Modification proposals shall contain a description of the component parts used in the modification and the recommended methods of installation on specific dispensing devices. Modification proposals shall be made available to the fire code official upon request.*

2304.3 Unattended self-service motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Unattended self-service motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Sections 2304.3.1 through 2304.3.13*, NFPA 30A as listed in division* (A) *of Section 3741.14 of the Revised Code and the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 and any amendments thereto or standards as may be adopted by the state fire marshal pursuant to division* (B) *of Section 3741.14 of the Revised Code. This section shall not apply to an unattended fleet vehicle motor fuel dispensing facility.*

2304.3.1 General. Where approved, unattended self-service motor fuel-dispensing facilities are allowed. As a condition of approval, the owner or operator shall provide, and be accountable for, daily site visits, regular equipment inspection and maintenance.

2304.3.2 Dispensers. Dispensing devices shall comply with Section 2306.7. *Only card operated dispensing devices approved by authoritative sources listed in rule 1301:7-7-01 of the Administrative Code shall be used.* Dispensing devices operated by the insertion of coins or currency shall not be used unless approved. *Approved key- or card-operated dispensing devices may be activated by the customer with the use of an authorized key or card.*

2304.3.3 Emergency controls. *Emergency* controls shall be provided in accordance with Section 2303.2. Emergency controls shall be of a type that is only manually resettable.

2304.3.4 Operating instructions. Dispenser operating instructions shall be conspicuously posted in approved locations on every dispenser and shall indicate the location of the emergency controls required by Section 2304.3.3.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2304.3.5 Emergency procedures. An approved emergency procedures sign, in addition to the signs required by Section 2305.6, shall be posted in a conspicuous location and shall read:

IN CASE OF FIRE, SPILL OR RELEASE

1. USE EMERGENCY PUMP SHUTOFF

2. REPORT THE ACCIDENT!

FIRE DEPARTMENT TELEPHONE NO._____

FACILITY ADDRESS_____

2304.3.6 Communications. A telephone not requiring a coin to operate or other approved, clearly identified means to notify the fire department shall be provided on the site in a location approved by the fire code official.

2304.3.7 Quantity limits. Dispensing equipment used at unsupervised locations shall comply with one of the following:

1. Dispensing devices shall be programmed or set to limit uninterrupted fuel delivery to 25 gallons (95 L) and require a manual action to resume delivery.

2. The amount of fuel being dispensed shall be limited *to an approved* quantity by a preprogrammed card.

Exception: *This section shall not apply to fixed dispensing equipment at an unsupervised location at an airport that is used to dispense fuel directly into the fuel tank of an aircraft.*

2304.3.8 Spill containment. *Containment of small spills shall be controlled by grading the pavement away from the building and scoring the pavement or may be done by the use of an oil/water separator.*

2304.3.9 Dispensing devices. *Existing listed or labeled dispensing devices shall be permitted to be modified provided that the modifications made are "Listed by Report" by an approved testing laboratory or as otherwise approved by the fire code official. Modification proposals shall contain a description of the component parts used in the modification and the recommended methods of installation on specific dispensing devices. Modification proposals shall be made available to the fire code official upon request.*

2304.3.10 Smoking prohibited. *Gasoline and other flammable or combustible liquids shall be dispensed only by a person who is not smoking. Smoking shall be prohibited in the dispensing area.*

2304.3.11 Required fire protection. *In addition to fire protection equipment otherwise required by this code, an unattended motor fuel-dispensing facility shall also include automatic fixed suppression systems, and automatic fire detection, and transmission of an alarm to an off-site approved supervising station in accordance with Section 903.4.1.*

Exceptions:

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1. That portion of an unattended motor fuel-dispensing facility that is exclusively used to dispense fuel directly from fixed dispensing equipment into the fuel tank of aircraft shall not be required to have an automatic fixed suppression or automatic fire detection system.

2. That portion of an unattended motor fuel-dispensing facility that is exclusively used to dispense fuel directly from fixed dispensing equipment into the fuel tank of aircraft shall not be required to have transmission of an alarm to an off-site approved supervising station provided that the facility installs a telephone line or call box that complies with all of the following:

2.1 An operational and fully functioning telephone or call box shall be not less than 20 feet but not more than 100 feet from each dispensing location;

2.2 Each telephone or call box shall either provide a direct line to an off-site approved supervising station or to an approved emergency response authority;

2.3 Each telephone or call box shall be properly and conspicuously identified;

2.4 Each telephone or call box shall not require a coin or other form of payment to operate; and

2.5 The telephone or call box shall be installed at a location that complies with the above and that is approved by the fire code official.

***2304.3.11.1 Compressed natural gas facilities.** The requirement for an automatic fixed suppression system shall not apply to that portion of an unattended, open to the public motor fuel-dispensing facility where CNG is dispensed if all of the following apply:*

1. *The fueling areas where CNG is dispensed is equipped with a fire detection device(s) that is directly tied to the emergency shut down system; and*
2. *Upon activation of the emergency shut down system, operation of all CNG dispensers will automatically shut down and all CNG will automatically be isolated away from the dispensing area; and*
3. *Upon activation of the emergency shut down system, a notification system will automatically trigger notification to the fire department; and*
4. *No liquid fuels are being dispensed under the same canopy where CNG is being dispensed.*

***2304.3.12 Signage.** Signs shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2304.2.3, 2304.2.7 and 2304.3.5.*

***2304.3.13 Signage material.** All signs required by Section 2304.3.12 shall be constructed of rigid, weather-resistant material.*

2304.4 Dispensing into portable containers. The dispensing of flammable or combustible liquids into portable containers shall comply with Sections 2304.4.1 through 2304.4.3.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2304.4.1 Approved containers required. Class I, II and IIIA liquids shall not be dispensed into a portable container unless such container *is properly constructed of metal or other material* approved *by the fire code official,* does not exceed a 6-gallon (22.7 L) capacity and has a tight closure with a screwed or spring-loaded cover so designed that the contents can be dispensed without spilling. Liquids shall not be dispensed into portable or cargo tanks.

2304.4.2 Nozzle operation. A hose nozzle valve used for dispensing Class I liquids into a portable container shall be in compliance with Section 2306.7.6. *No person shall utilize the automatic latch-open device during the dispensing operation.*

2304.4.3 Location of containers being filled. Portable containers shall not be filled while located inside the trunk, passenger compartment or truck bed of a vehicle.

Section 2305 Operational requirements

2305.1 Tank filling operations for Class I, II or III liquids. Delivery operations to tanks for Class I, II or III liquids shall comply with Sections 2305.1.1 through 2305.1.3 and the applicable requirements of Chapter 57.

2305.1.1 Delivery vehicle location. Where liquid delivery to above-ground storage tanks is accomplished by positive-pressure operation, tank vehicles shall be positioned not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from tanks receiving Class I liquids and 15 feet (4572 mm) from tanks receiving Class II and IIIA liquids, measured from the tank to the nearest unloading valve on the tank vehicle.

2305.1.2 Tank capacity calculation. The driver, operator or attendant of a tank vehicle shall, before making delivery to a tank, determine the unfilled, available capacity of such tank *in accordance with accepted industry practices*.

2305.1.3 Tank fill connections. Delivery of flammable liquids to tanks more than 1,000 gallons (3785 L) in capacity shall be made by means of approved liquid- and vapor-tight connections between the delivery hose and tank fill pipe. Where tanks are equipped with any type of vapor recovery system, all connections required to be made for the safe and proper functioning of the particular vapor recovery process shall be made. Such connections shall be made liquid and vapor tight and remain connected throughout the unloading process. Vapors shall not be discharged at grade level during delivery.

2305.2 Equipment maintenance and inspection. Motor fuel-dispensing facility equipment shall be maintained in proper working order at all times in accordance with Sections 2305.2.1 through 2305.2.5.

2305.2.1 Inspections. Flammable and combustible liquid fuel-dispensing and containment equipment shall be periodically inspected where required by the fire code official to verify that the equipment is in proper working order and not subject to leakage. Records of inspections shall be maintained *in accordance with Section 109.3*.

2305.2.2 Repairs and service. The fire code official is authorized to require damaged or unsafe containment and dispensing equipment to be repaired or serviced in an approved manner.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2305.2.3 Dispensing devices. Where maintenance to Class I liquid dispensing devices becomes necessary and such maintenance could allow the accidental release or ignition of liquid, the following precautions shall be taken before such maintenance is begun:

1. Only persons knowledgeable in performing the required maintenance shall perform the work.

2. Electrical power to the dispensing device and pump serving the dispenser shall be shut off at the main electrical disconnect panel.

3. The emergency shutoff valve at the dispenser, where installed, shall be closed.

4. Vehicle traffic and unauthorized persons shall be prevented from coming within 12 feet (3658 mm) of the dispensing device.

2305.2.4 Emergency shutoff valves. Automatic emergency shutoff valves required by Section 2306.7.4 shall be checked not less than once per year by manually tripping the hold-open linkage.

2305.2.5 Leak detectors. Leak detection devices required by Section 2306.7.7.1 shall be checked and tested not less than annually in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications to ensure proper installation and operation.

2305.3 Spill control. Provisions shall be made to prevent liquids spilled during dispensing operations from flowing into buildings. Acceptable methods include, but shall not be limited to, grading driveways, raising doorsills or other approved means.

2305.4 Sources of ignition. Smoking and open flames shall be prohibited in areas where fuel is dispensed. The engines of vehicles being fueled shall be shut off during fueling. Electrical equipment shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

2305.5 Fire extinguishers. *Portable* fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 with a minimum rating of 2-A:20-B:C shall be provided and located such that an extinguisher is not more than 75 feet (22 860 mm) from pumps, dispensers or storage tank fill-pipe openings.

2305.6 Warning signs. *As required by Section 3741.14 of the Revised Code,* warning signs shall be conspicuously posted *on each gasoline pump island where self-service is offered* and shall state the following*, with at a minimum the capitalized words below being in block letters:*

1. NO SMOKING *OR VAPING*.

2. *STOP ENGINE*.

3. Discharge your static electricity before fueling by touching a metal surface away from the nozzle.

4. To prevent static charge, do not reenter your vehicle while gasoline is pumping.

5. If a fire starts, do not remove nozzle-back away immediately.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

6. *WARNING*—IT IS UNLAWFUL AND DANGEROUS TO DISPENSE GASOLINE INTO UNAPPROVED CONTAINERS.

7. No filling of portable containers in or on a motor vehicle. Place container on ground before filling.

8. *PERSONS USING DISPENSERS WITH HOLD-OPEN LATCHES MUST REMAIN AT THE REFUELING POINT DURING REFUELING.*

Exception: *Signs installed at dispensers prior to February 1, 2026, containing language that is substantially similar to items 1 through 8 of this section shall be deemed as compliant with this section.*

2305.7 Control of brush and debris. Fenced and diked areas surrounding above-ground tanks shall be kept free from vegetation, debris and other material that is not necessary to the proper operation of the tank and piping system.

Weeds, grass, brush, trash and other combustible materials shall be kept not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from fuel-handling equipment.

Section 2306 Flammable and combustible liquid motor fuel-dispensing facilities

2306.1 General. Storage of flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Chapter 57 and Sections 2306.2 through 2306.6.3.

2306.2 Method of storage. *Storage of* Class I, II and III *flammable or combustible liquids* at motor fuel-dispensing facilities *to which the public does not have access*, shall be *stored in aboveground tanks in accordance with Sections 2306.2.2 through 2306.2.6, or stored in underground tanks in accordance with either Chapter 1301:7-9 of the Administrative Code* as *required or, when not so required, stored in accordance with Section 2306.2.1*.

At motor fuel-dispensing facilities to which the public has access the only approved method of storage shall be in underground tanks in accordance with Chapter 1301:7-9 of the Administrative Code.

Exception: *Where approved by the fire code, the approved method of storage of Class I, II and IIIA flammable or combustible liquids at marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities to which the public has access shall not be required to have an underground tank as long as the approved aboveground tank is in accordance with Sections 2306.2.2 through 2306.2.6* and *in accordance with Section 2310.1.*

2306.2.1 Underground tanks. Underground tanks for the storage of Class I, II and IIIA liquid fuels shall comply with Chapter 57.

2306.2.1.1 Inventory control for underground tanks. Accurate daily inventory records shall be maintained and reconciled on underground fuel storage tanks for indication of possible leakage from tanks and piping. The records shall include records for each product showing daily reconciliation between sales, use, receipts and inventory on hand. Where there is more than one system consisting of tanks serving separate pumps or dispensers for a product, the reconciliation shall be ascertained separately for each tank system. A

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

consistent or accidental loss of product shall be immediately reported to the fire code official.

2306.2.2 Above-ground tanks located inside buildings. Above-ground tanks for the storage of Class I, II and IIIA liquid fuels are allowed to be located in buildings. Such tanks shall be located in special enclosures complying with Section 2306.2.6, in a liquid storage room or a liquid storage warehouse complying with Chapter 57, or shall be listed and labeled as protected above-ground tanks in accordance with UL 2085.

2306.2.3 Above-ground tanks located outdoors, above grade. Above-ground tanks shall not be used for the storage of Class I, II or III liquid motor fuels except as provided. *Existing aboveground tank installations, even if previously approved, that are determined to constitute a hazard by the fire code official shall not be continued in service. Unsafe tanks shall be removed as required by the fire code official and in accordance with this code.*

1. Above-ground tanks used for outdoor, above-grade storage of Class I liquids shall be listed and labeled as protected above-ground tanks in accordance with UL 2085 and shall be in accordance with Chapter 57. Such tanks shall be located in accordance with Table 2306.2.3.

   Exception: *An aboveground tank approved by an authoritative source listed in Chapter 1 as a fire-resistant tank may be utilized in lieu of a protected tank when installed in accordance with Table 2306.2.3.*

2. Above-ground tanks used for outdoor, above-grade storage of Class II or IIIA liquids shall be listed and labeled as protected above-ground tanks in accordance with UL 2085 and shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 57. Tank locations shall be in accordance with Table 2306.2.3.

   Exception: Other above-ground tanks that comply with Chapter 57 where approved by the fire code official.

3. Tanks containing fuels shall not exceed 12,000 gallons (45 420 L) in individual capacity or 48,000 gallons (181 680 L) in aggregate capacity. Installations with the maximum allowable aggregate capacity shall be separated from other such installations by not less than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

4. Tanks located at *areas used for agricultural purposes and* construction projects shall comply with Section 5706.2.

5. Above-ground tanks used for outdoor above-grade storage of Class IIIB liquid motor fuel shall be listed and labeled in accordance with UL 142 or listed and labeled as protected above-ground tanks in accordance with UL 2085 and shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 57. Tank locations shall be in accordance with Table 2306.2.3.

Table 2306.2.3
Minimum separation requirements for above-ground tanks

Tank type	Individual tank	Minimum distance	Minimum distance	Minimum distance	Minimum distance	Minimum distance

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

	capacity (gallons)	from nearest important building on same property (feet)	from nearest fuel dispenser (feet)	from lot line that is or can be built on, including the opposite side of a public way (feet)	from nearest side of any public way (feet)	between tanks (feet)
Protected above ground tanks[d]	Less than or equal to 6,000	5	25[a,c]	15	5	3
	Greater than 6,000	15	25[a,c]	25	15	3
Tanks in vaults	0-20,000	0[b]	0	0[b]	0	Separate compartment required for each tank
Other tanks	All	50	50	100	50	3

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

a. At fleet vehicle motor fuel-dispensing facilities, a minimum separation distance is not required.

b. *Underground vaults shall be located such that they will not be subject to loading from nearby structures, or they shall be designed to accommodate applied loads from existing or future structures that can be built nearby.*

c. For Class IIIB liquids in protected above-ground tanks, a minimum separation distance is not required.

d. A fire-resistant tank may be utilized in lieu of a protected tank when approved by the fire code official and installed in accordance with the distance requirements of NFPA 30A

2306.2.4 Above-ground tanks located in above-grade vaults or below-grade vaults. Above-ground tanks used for storage of Class I, II or IIIA liquid motor fuels are allowed to be installed in vaults located above grade or below grade in accordance with Section 5704.2.8 and shall comply with Sections 2306.2.4.1 and 2306.2.4.2. Tanks in above-grade vaults shall also comply with Table 2306.2.3.

2306.2.4.1 Tank capacity limits. Tanks storing Class I and Class II liquids at an individual site shall be limited to a maximum individual capacity of 15,000 gallons (56 775 L) and an aggregate capacity of 48,000 gallons (181 680 L).

2306.2.4.2 Fleet vehicle motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Tanks storing Class II and Class IIIA liquids at a fleet vehicle motor fuel-dispensing facility shall be limited to a maximum individual capacity of 20,000 gallons (75 700 L) and an aggregate capacity of 80,000 gallons (302 800 L).

2306.2.5 Portable tanks. Where approved by the fire code official, portable tanks are allowed to be temporarily used in conjunction with the dispensing of Class I, II or III liquids into the fuel tanks of motor vehicles or motorized equipment on premises not normally open to the public. The approval shall include a definite time limit.

2306.2.6 Special enclosures. Where installation of tanks in accordance with Section 5704.2.11 is impractical, or because of property or building limitations, tanks for liquid fuels

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

are allowed to be installed in buildings in special enclosures in accordance with all of the following:

1. The special enclosure shall be liquid tight and vapor tight.

2. The special enclosure shall not contain backfill.

3. Sides, top and bottom of the special enclosure shall be of reinforced concrete not less than 6 inches (152 mm) thick, with openings for inspection through the top only.

4. Tank connections shall be piped or closed such that neither vapors nor liquid can escape into the enclosed space between the special enclosure and any tanks inside the special enclosure.

5. Means shall be provided whereby portable equipment can be employed to discharge to the outside any vapors that might accumulate inside the special enclosure should leakage occur.

6. Tanks containing Class I, II or IIIA liquids inside a special enclosure shall not exceed 6,000 gallons (22 710 L) in individual capacity or 18,000 gallons (68 130 L) in aggregate capacity.

7. Each tank within special enclosures shall be surrounded by a clear space of not less than 3 feet (910 mm) to allow for maintenance and inspection.

2306.3 Security. Above-ground tanks for the storage of liquid motor fuels shall be safeguarded from public access or unauthorized entry. *Tanks shall be enclosed with a chain link fence at least 6 feet (1.8 m) high. The fence shall be separated from the tanks by at least 3 feet (0.9 m) and shall have a gate that is secured against unauthorized entry.*

Exceptions:

1. Fueling facilities that are located on a property that has a perimeter security fence.

2. Tanks that are enclosed in vaults.

2306.4 Physical protection. Guard posts complying with Section 312 or other approved means shall be provided to protect above-ground tanks against impact by a motor vehicle unless the tank is listed as a protected above-ground tank with vehicle impact protection.

2306.5 Secondary containment. Above-ground tanks shall be provided with drainage control or diking in accordance with Chapter 57. Drainage control and diking is not required for listed secondary containment tanks. Secondary containment systems shall be monitored either visually or automatically. Enclosed secondary containment systems shall be provided with emergency venting in accordance with Section 2306.6.2.5.

2306.6 Piping, valves, fittings and ancillary equipment for use with flammable or combustible liquids. The design, fabrication, assembly, testing and inspection of piping, valves, fittings and ancillary equipment for use with flammable or combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Chapter 57 and Sections 2306.6.1 through 2306.6.3.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2306.6.1 Protection from damage. Piping shall be located such that it is protected from physical damage.

2306.6.2 Piping, valves, fittings and ancillary equipment for above-ground tanks for Class I, II and III liquids. Piping, valves, fittings and ancillary equipment for above-ground tanks storing Class I, II and III liquids shall comply with Sections 2306.6.2.1 through 2306.6.2.6.

2306.6.2.1 Tank openings. Tank openings for above-ground tanks shall be through the top only.

2306.6.2.2 Fill-pipe connections. The fill pipe for above-ground tanks shall be provided with a means for making a direct connection to the tank vehicle's fuel-delivery hose so that the delivery of fuel is not exposed to the open air during the filling operation. Where any portion of the fill pipe exterior to the tank extends below the level of the top of the tank, a check valve shall be installed in the fill pipe not more than 12 inches (305 mm) from the fill-hose connection.

2306.6.2.3 Overfill protection. Overfill protection shall be provided for above-ground flammable and combustible liquid storage tanks in accordance with Sections 5704.2.7.5.8 and 5704.2.9.7.5.

2306.6.2.4 Siphon prevention. An approved anti-siphon method shall be provided in the piping system to prevent flow of liquid by siphon action.

2306.6.2.5 Emergency relief venting. Above-ground storage tanks, tank compartments and enclosed secondary containment spaces shall be provided with emergency relief venting in accordance with Chapter 57.

2306.6.2.6 Spill containers. A spill container having a capacity of not less than 5 gallons (19 L) shall be provided for each fill connection. For tanks with a top fill connection, spill containers shall be noncombustible and shall be fixed to the tank and equipped with a manual drain valve that drains into the primary tank. For tanks with a remote fill connection, a portable spill container is allowed.

2306.6.3 Piping, valves, fittings and ancillary equipment for underground tanks. Piping, valves, fittings and ancillary equipment for underground tanks shall comply with Chapter 57 and NFPA 30A.

2306.7 Fuel-dispensing systems for flammable or combustible liquids. The design, fabrication and installation of fuel-dispensing systems for flammable or combustible liquid fuels shall be in accordance with Sections 2306.7.1 through 2306.7.9.2.4. *A*lcohol blended fuel-dispensing systems shall also comply with Section 2306.8.

2306.7.1 Listed equipment. Electrical equipment, dispensers, hose, nozzles and submersible or subsurface pumps used in fuel-dispensing systems shall be listed.

2306.7.2 Fixed pumps required. Class I and II liquids shall be transferred from tanks by means of fixed pumps designed and equipped to allow control of the flow and prevent leakage or accidental discharge.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2306.7.3 Mounting of dispensers. Dispensing devices, except those installed on top of a protected above-ground tank that qualifies as vehicle-impact resistant, shall be protected against physical damage by mounting on a concrete island 6 inches (152 mm) or more in height, or shall be protected in accordance with Section 312. Dispensing devices shall be installed and securely fastened to their mounting surface in accordance with the dispenser manufacturer's instructions. Dispensing devices installed indoors shall be located in an approved position where they cannot be struck by an out-of-control vehicle descending a ramp or other slope.

2306.7.3.1 Additional impact protection. The fire code official is authorized to require additional impact protection in accordance with Section 312 where dispensing devices are located in areas near parking areas, multiple dispensing devices, highway on- and off-ramps, and other areas where there is a higher potential for vehicle impacts.

2306.7.4 Dispenser emergency shutoff valve. An approved automatic emergency shutoff valve designed to close in the event of a fire or impact shall be properly installed in the liquid supply line at the base of each dispenser supplied by a remote pump. The valve shall be installed so that the shear groove is flush with or within ½ inch (12.7 mm) of the top of the concrete dispenser island and there is clearance provided for maintenance purposes around the valve body and operating parts. The valve shall be installed at the liquid supply line inlet of each overhead-type dispenser. Where installed, a vapor return line located inside the dispenser housing shall have a shear section or approved flexible connector for the liquid supply line emergency shutoff valve to function. Emergency shutoff valves shall be installed and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, tested at the time of initial installation and not less than yearly thereafter in accordance with Section 2305.2.4.

***2306.7.4.1** As of the effective date of this chapter, for tank systems regulated under 1301:7-9 of the Ohio Administrative Code, manifolding of existing product piping under a dispenser and above the shear valve, impact valve or fire valve, is prohibited. This does not apply to dispenser blending devices above the shear valve, impact valve or fire valve.*

2306.7.5 Dispenser hose. Dispenser hoses shall be not more than 18 feet (5486 mm) in length unless otherwise approved. Dispenser hoses shall be approved. When not in use, hoses shall be reeled, racked or otherwise protected from damage.

2306.7.5.1 Emergency breakaway devices. Dispenser hoses for Class I and II liquids shall be equipped with a listed emergency breakaway device designed to retain liquid on both sides of a breakaway point. Such devices shall be installed and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Where hoses are attached to hose-retrieving mechanisms, the emergency breakaway device shall be located between the hose nozzle and the point of attachment of the hose-retrieval mechanism to the hose.

2306.7.6 Fuel delivery nozzles. A listed automatic-closing-type hose nozzle valve with or without a latch-open device shall be provided on island-type dispensers used for dispensing Class I, II or III liquids.

Overhead-type dispensing units shall be provided with a listed automatic-closing-type hose nozzle valve without a latch-open device.

Exception: A listed automatic-closing-type hose nozzle valve with latch-open device is allowed to be used on overhead-type dispensing units where the design of the system is

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

such that the hose nozzle valve will close automatically in the event the valve is released from a fill opening or upon impact with a driveway.

2306.7.6.1 Special requirements for nozzles. Where dispensing of Class I, II or III liquids is performed, a listed automatic-closing-type hose nozzle valve shall be used incorporating *one* of the following features:

1. The hose nozzle valve shall be equipped with an integral latch-open device.

2. Where the flow of product is normally controlled by devices or equipment other than the hose nozzle valve, the hose nozzle valve shall not be capable of being opened unless the delivery hose is pressurized. If pressure to the hose is lost, the nozzle shall close automatically.

   Exception: Vapor recovery nozzles incorporating insertion interlock devices designed to achieve shutoff on disconnect from the vehicle fill pipe.

3. The hose nozzle shall be designed such that the nozzle is retained in the fill pipe during the filling operation.

4. The system shall include listed equipment with a feature that causes or requires the closing of the hose nozzle valve before the product flow can be resumed or before the hose nozzle valve can be replaced in its normal position in the dispenser.

2306.7.7 Remote pumping systems. Remote pumping systems for liquid fuels shall comply with Sections 2306.7.7.1 and 2306.7.7.2.

2306.7.7.1 Leak detection. Where remote pumps are used to supply fuel dispensers, each pump shall have installed on the discharge side a listed leak detection device that will detect a leak in the piping and provide an indication *to alert the operator of the presence of a leak*. A leak detection device is not required if the piping from the pump discharge to under the dispenser is above ground and visible.

2306.7.7.2 Location. Remote pumps installed above grade, outside of buildings, shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from lines of adjoining property that can be built on and not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from any building opening. Where an outside pump location is impractical, pumps are permitted to be installed inside buildings as provided for dispensers in Section 2301.4 and Chapter 57. Pumps shall be substantially anchored and protected against physical damage.

2306.7.8 Gravity and pressure dispensing. Flammable liquids shall not be dispensed by gravity from tanks, drums, barrels or similar containers. Flammable or combustible liquids shall not be dispensed by a device operating through pressure within a storage tank, drum or container.

2306.7.9 Vapor-recovery and vapor-processing systems. Vapor-recovery and vapor-processing systems shall be in accordance with Sections 2306.7.9.1 through 2306.7.9.2.4.

2306.7.9.1 Vapor-*recovery* systems. *Vapor recovery systems are systems designed to capture and retain, without processing, vapors displaced during transfer or filling*

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

operations. Vapor-recovery systems shall comply with Sections 2306.7.9.1.1 through 2306.7.9.1.5.

2306.7.9.1.1 Dispensing devices. Dispensing devices incorporating provisions for vapor recovery shall be listed and labeled. Where existing listed or labeled dispensing devices are modified for vapor recovery, such modifications shall be listed by report by a nationally recognized testing laboratory *or by an authoritative source listed in Chapter 1*. The listing by report shall contain a description of the component parts used in the modification and recommended method of installation on specific dispensers. Such report shall be made available on request of the fire code official.

2306.7.9.1.2 Vapor-return line closeoff. *A means* shall be provided to *prevent the discharge of* vapor from dispensers when the product is not being dispensed.

2306.7.9.1.3 Piping. Piping in vapor-*recovery* systems shall be in accordance with *Section* 5703.6. Nonmetallic piping shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's *installation* instructions.

Vent piping shall be in accordance with Sections 5703.6 and 5704.2. Vapor return piping shall be installed in a manner that drains back to the tank, without sags or traps in which liquid can become trapped. If necessary, because of grade, condensate tanks are allowed in vapor return piping. Condensate tanks shall be designed and installed so that they can be drained without opening.

2306.7.9.1.4 Flexible joints and shear joints. Flexible joints shall be installed in accordance with Section 5703.6.9.

An approved shear joint shall be rigidly mounted and connected by a union in the vapor return piping at the base of each dispensing device. The shear joint shall be mounted flush with the top of the surface on which the dispenser is mounted.

2306.7.9.1.5 Testing. Vapor return lines and vent piping shall be tested in accordance with Section 5703.6.3.

2306.7.9.2 Vapor-processing systems. *Vapor processing systems are designed to capture and process vapors displaced during transfer or filling operations by use of mechanical or chemical means.* Vapor-processing systems shall comply with Sections 2306.7.9.2.1 through 2306.7.9.2.4.

2306.7.9.2.1 Equipment. Equipment in vapor-processing systems, including hose nozzle valves, vapor pumps, flame arresters, fire checks or systems for prevention of flame propagation, controls and vapor-processing equipment, shall be individually listed for the intended use in a specified manner.

Vapor-processing systems that introduce air into the underground piping or storage tanks shall be provided with equipment for prevention of flame propagation that has been tested and listed as suitable for the intended use.

2306.7.9.2.2 Location. Vapor-processing equipment shall be located at or above grade. Sources of ignition shall be located not less than *20* feet (*6096* mm) from fuel-transfer areas and not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above tank fill openings and tops

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

of dispenser islands. Vapor-processing units shall be located not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from the nearest building or lot line of a property that can be built on.

Exception: Where the required distances to buildings, lot lines or fuel-transfer areas cannot be obtained, means shall be provided to protect equipment against fire exposure. Acceptable means shall include but not be limited to either of the following:

1. Approved protective enclosures, which extend not less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the equipment, constructed of fire-resistant or noncombustible materials.

2. Fire protection using an approved water-spray system.

2306.7.9.2.2.1 Distance from dispensing devices. Vapor-processing equipment shall be located not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from dispensing devices.

2306.7.9.2.2.2 Physical protection. Vapor-processing equipment shall be protected against physical damage by guardrails, curbs, protective enclosures or fencing. Where approved protective enclosures are used, approved means shall be provided to ventilate the volume within the enclosure to prevent pocketing of flammable vapors.

2306.7.9.2.2.3 Downslopes. Where a downslope exists toward the location of the vapor-processing unit from a fuel-transfer area, the fire code official is authorized to require additional separation by distance and height.

2306.7.9.2.3 Installation. Vapor-processing units shall be securely mounted on concrete, masonry or structural steel supports on concrete or other noncombustible foundations. Vapor-processing equipment is allowed to be installed on roofs where approved.

2306.7.9.2.4 Piping. Piping *for vapor-processing systems* shall be in accordance with Section 5703.6.

2306.8 Alcohol-blended fuel-dispensing *operations*. The design, fabrication and installation of alcohol-blended fuel-dispensing systems shall be in accordance with Section 2306.7 and Sections 2306.8.1 through 2306.8.6.

2306.8.1 Listed equipment. Dispensers shall be listed in accordance with UL 87A. Hoses, nozzles, breakaway fittings, swivels, flexible connectors or dispenser emergency shutoff valves, vapor recovery systems, leak detection devices and pumps used in alcohol-blended fuel-dispensing systems shall be listed for the specific purpose *and approved as that term is defined in this chapter.*

2306.8.2 Compatibility. Dispensers shall be used only with the fuels for which they have been listed and that are marked on the product. Field-installed components including hose assemblies, breakaway fittings, swivel connectors and hose nozzle valves shall be provided in accordance with the listing and the marking on the unit. *Existing dispensers may be modified to meet compatibility requirements in accordance with Section 2304.3.9.*

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2306.8.3 *Deleted*.

2306.8.4 Facility identification. Facilities dispensing alcohol-blended fuels shall be identified by *marking the fill pipes in accordance with API 1637 or* an approved means.

2306.8.5 Marking. *As approved by the state fire marshal d*ispensers shall be marked to identify the types of alcohol blended fuels to be dispensed.

2306.8.6 Maintenance and inspection. Equipment shall be maintained and inspected in accordance with Section 2305.2.

Section 2307 Liquefied petroleum gas motor fuel-dispensing facilities

2307.1 General. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities for liquefied petroleum gas (LP-gas) fuel shall be in accordance with this section and Chapter 61.

2307.2 Approvals. Storage vessels and equipment used for the storage or dispensing of LP-gas shall be approved or listed in accordance with Sections 2307.2.1 and 2307.2.2.

2307.2.1 Approved equipment. Containers, pressure relief devices (including pressure relief valves), pressure regulators and piping for LP-gas shall be approved.

2307.2.2 Listed equipment. Hoses, hose connections, vehicle fuel connections, dispensers, LP-gas pumps and electrical equipment used for LP-gas shall be listed.

2307.3 Attendants. Motor fuel-dispensing operations for LP-gas shall be conducted by qualified attendants or in accordance with Section 2307.7 by persons trained in the proper handling of LP-gas.

2307.4 Location of dispensing operations and equipment. The point of transfer for LP-gas dispensing operations shall be separated from buildings and other exposures in accordance with the following:

1. Not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from buildings where the exterior wall is not part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly having a rating of 1 hour or greater.

2. Not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from combustible overhangs on buildings, measured from a vertical line dropped from the face of the overhang at a point nearest the point of transfer.

3. Not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from the lot line of property that can be built on.

4. Not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from the centerline of the nearest mainline railroad track.

5. Not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from public streets, highways, thoroughfares, sidewalks and driveways.

6. Not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) from buildings where the exterior wall is part of a fire-resistance-rated assembly having a rating of 1 hour or greater.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Exception: The point of transfer for LP-gas dispensing operations need not be separated from canopies that are constructed in accordance with the *building code* and that provide weather protection for the dispensing equipment.

LP-gas containers shall be located in accordance with Chapter 61. LP-gas storage and dispensing equipment shall be located outdoors.

2307.5 Additional requirements for LP-gas dispensers and equipment. LP-gas dispensers and related equipment shall comply with the following provisions.

1. Pumps shall be fixed in place and shall be designed to allow control of the flow and to prevent leakage and accidental discharge.

2. Dispensing devices installed within 10 feet (3048 mm) of where vehicle traffic occurs shall be protected against physical damage by mounting on a concrete island 6 inches (152 mm) or more in height, or shall be protected in accordance with Section 312.

3. Dispensing devices shall be securely fastened to their mounting surface in accordance with the dispenser manufacturer's instructions.

2307.6 Installation of LP-gas dispensing devices and equipment. The installation and operation of LP-gas dispensing systems shall be in accordance with Sections 2307.6.1 through 2307.6.4 and Chapter 61. LP-gas dispensers and dispensing stations shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications and their listing.

2307.6.1 Product control valves. The dispenser system piping shall be protected from uncontrolled discharge in accordance with the following:

1. Where mounted on a concrete base, a means shall be provided and installed within ½ inch (12.7 mm) of the top of the concrete base that will prevent flow from the supply piping in the event that the dispenser is displaced from its mounting.

2. A manual shutoff valve and an excess flow-control check valve shall be located in the liquid line between the pump and the dispenser inlet where the dispensing device is installed at a remote location and is not part of a complete storage and dispensing unit mounted on a common base.

3. An excess flow-control check valve or an emergency shutoff valve shall be installed in or on the dispenser at the point at which the dispenser hose is connected to the liquid piping.

4. A listed automatic-closing type hose nozzle valve with or without a latch-open device shall be provided on island-type dispensers.

2307.6.2 Hoses. Hoses and piping for the dispensing of LP-gas shall be provided with hydrostatic relief valves. The hose length shall not exceed 18 feet (5486 mm). An approved method shall be provided to protect the hose against mechanical damage.

2307.6.3 Emergency breakaway devices. Dispenser hoses shall be equipped with a listed emergency breakaway device designed to retain liquid on both sides of the breakaway point. Where hoses are attached to hose-retrieving mechanisms, the emergency breakaway device

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

shall be located such that the breakaway device activates to protect the dispenser from being displaced.

2307.6.4 Vehicle impact protection. Where installed within 10 feet of vehicle traffic, LP-gas storage containers, pumps and dispensers shall be protected in accordance with Section 2307.5, Item 2.

2307.7 Public fueling of motor vehicles. Self-service LP-gas dispensing systems, including key, code and card lock dispensing systems, shall be limited to the filling of permanently mounted containers providing fuel to the LP-gas powered vehicle.

The requirements for self-service LP-gas dispensing systems shall be in accordance with the following:

1. The arrangement and operation of the transfer of product into a vehicle shall be in accordance with this section and Chapter 61.

2. The system shall be provided with an emergency shutoff switch located within 100 feet (30 480 mm) of, but not less than 20 feet (6096 mm) from, dispensers.

3. The owner of the LP-gas motor fuel-dispensing facility or the owner's designee shall provide for the safe operation of the system and the training of users.

4. The dispenser and hose-end valve shall release not more than ⅛ fluid ounce (4 cc) of liquid to the atmosphere upon breaking the connection with the fill valve on the vehicle.

5. Portable fire extinguishers shall be provided in accordance with Section 2305.5.

6. Warning signs shall be provided in accordance with Section 2305.6.

7. The area around the dispenser shall be maintained in accordance with Section 2305.7.

2307.8 Overfilling. LP-gas containers shall not be filled with LP-gas in excess of the volume determined using the fixed maximum liquid level gauge installed on the container, the volume determined by the overfilling prevention device installed on the container or the weight determined by the required percentage of the water capacity marked on the container.

Section 2308 Compressed natural gas motor fuel-dispensing facilities

2308.1 General. Motor fuel-dispensing facilities for compressed natural gas (CNG) fuel shall be in accordance with this section, Chapter 53 and Section 413 of the International Fuel Gas Code.

2308.2 Approvals. Storage vessels and equipment used for the storage, compression or dispensing of CNG shall be approved or listed in accordance with Sections 2308.2.1 through 2308.2.4.

2308.2.1 Approved equipment. Containers, compressors, pressure relief devices (including pressure relief valves), and pressure regulators and piping used for CNG shall be approved.

2308.2.2 Listed equipment. Hoses, hose connections, dispensers and electrical equipment used for CNG shall be listed. Vehicle-fueling connections shall be listed and labeled.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2308.2.3 Residential fueling appliance (RFA). Residential fueling appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the installation requirements of CSA/ANSI NGV 5.1, manufacturer's installation instructions and Section 413 of the International Fuel Gas Code. The capacity of an RFA shall not exceed 5 cubic feet per minute (0.14 m^3/min) of natural gas.

2308.2.4 Vehicle fueling appliance (VFA). Nonresidential fueling appliances shall be listed and installed in accordance with the installation requirements of CSA/ANSI NGV 5.2, manufacturer's installation instructions and the requirements of Section 413 of the International Fuel Gas Code for VFAs. The capacity of the VFA shall not exceed 10 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m^3/min) of natural gas.

2308.3 Location of dispensing operations and equipment. Compression, storage and dispensing equipment shall be located above ground, outdoors.

Exceptions:

1. Compression, storage or dispensing equipment shall be allowed in buildings of noncombustible construction, as set forth in the *building code*, that are unenclosed for three-quarters or more of the perimeter.

2. Compression, storage and dispensing equipment shall be allowed indoors or in vaults in accordance with Chapter 53.

2308.3.1 Location on property. In addition to the requirements of Section 2303.1, compression, storage and dispensing equipment not located in vaults complying with Chapter 53 shall be installed as follows:

1. Not beneath power lines.

2. Ten feet (3048 mm) or more from the nearest building or lot line that could be built on, public street, sidewalk or source of ignition.

   Exception: Dispensing equipment need not be separated from canopies that are constructed in accordance with the *building code* and that provide weather protection for the dispensing equipment.

3. Twenty-five feet (7620 mm) or more from the nearest rail of any railroad track and 50 feet (15 240 mm) or more from the nearest rail of any railroad main track or any railroad or transit line where power for train propulsion is provided by an outside electrical source, such as third rail or overhead catenary.

4. Fifty feet (15 240 mm) or more from the vertical plane below the nearest overhead wire of a trolley bus line.

2308.4 Private fueling of motor vehicles. Self-service CNG-dispensing systems, including key, code and card lock dispensing systems, shall be limited to the filling of permanently mounted fuel containers on CNG-powered vehicles.

In addition to the requirements in Section 2305, the owner of a self-service CNG motor fuel-dispensing facility shall ensure the safe operation of the system and the training of users.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2308.5 Pressure regulators. Pressure regulators shall be designed and installed or protected so that their operation will not be affected by the elements (freezing rain, sleet, snow or ice), mud or debris. The protection is allowed to be an integral part of the regulator.

2308.6 Valves. Gas piping to equipment shall be provided with a remote, manual shutoff valve that is provided with ready access.

2308.7 Emergency shutdown control. An emergency shutdown control shall be located within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of, but not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from, dispensers and shall also be provided in the compressor area. Upon activation, the emergency shutdown system shall automatically shut off the power supply to the compressor and close valves between the main gas supply and the compressor and between the storage containers and dispensers.

2308.8 Discharge of CNG from motor vehicle fuel storage containers. The discharge of CNG from motor vehicle fuel cylinders for the purposes of maintenance, cylinder certification, calibration of dispensers or other activities shall be in accordance with Sections 2308.8.1 through 2308.8.1.2.6.

2308.8.1 Methods of discharge. The discharge of CNG from motor vehicle fuel cylinders shall be accomplished through a closed transfer system in accordance with Section 2308.8.1.1 or an approved method of atmospheric venting in accordance with Section 2308.8.1.2.

2308.8.1.1 Closed transfer system. A documented procedure that explains the logical sequence for discharging the cylinder shall be provided to the fire code official for review and approval. The procedure shall include what actions the operator will take in the event of a low-pressure or high-pressure natural gas release during the discharging activity. A drawing illustrating the arrangement of piping, regulators and equipment settings shall be provided to the fire code official for review and approval. The drawing shall illustrate the piping and regulator arrangement and shall be shown in spatial relation to the location of the compressor, storage vessels and emergency shutdown devices.

2308.8.1.2 Atmospheric venting. Atmospheric venting of CNG shall comply with Sections 2308.8.1.2.1 through 2308.8.1.2.6.

2308.8.1.2.1 Plans and specifications. A drawing illustrating the location of the vessel support, piping, the method of grounding and bonding, and other requirements specified herein shall be provided to the fire code official for review and approval.

2308.8.1.2.2 Cylinder stability. A method of rigidly supporting the vessel during the venting of CNG shall be provided. The selected method shall provide not less than two points of support and shall prevent the horizontal and lateral movement of the vessel. The system shall be designed to prevent the movement of the vessel based on the highest gas-release velocity through valve orifices at the vessel's rated pressure and volume. The structure or appurtenance shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

2308.8.1.2.3 Separation. The structure or appurtenance used for stabilizing the cylinder shall be separated from the site equipment, features and exposures and shall be located in accordance with Table 2308.8.1.2.3.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Table 2308.8.1.2.3
Separation distance for atmospheric venting of CNG

Equipment or feature	Minimum separation (feet)
Buildings	25
Building openings	25
CNG compressor and storage vessels	25
CNG dispensers	25
Lot lines	15
Public ways	15
Vehicles	25

For SI: 1 foot = 304.8 mm.

2308.8.1.2.4 Grounding and bonding. The structure or appurtenance used for supporting the cylinder shall be grounded in accordance with NFPA 70. The cylinder valve shall be bonded prior to the commencement of venting operations.

2308.8.1.2.5 Vent tube. A vent tube that will divert the gas flow to the atmosphere shall be installed on the cylinder prior to commencement of the venting and purging operation. The vent tube shall be constructed of pipe or tubing materials approved for use with CNG in accordance with Chapter 53.

The vent tube shall be capable of dispersing the gas not less than 10 feet (3048 mm) above grade level. The vent tube shall not be provided with a rain cap or other feature that would limit or obstruct the gas flow.

At the connection fitting of the vent tube and the CNG cylinder, a listed bidirectional detonation flame arrester shall be provided.

2308.8.1.2.6 Signage. "No Smoking" signs complying with Section 310 shall be posted within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the cylinder support structure or appurtenance. *Signs that read* "Cylinder Shall Be Bonded" shall be posted on the cylinder support structure or appurtenance.

Section 2309 Hydrogen motor fuel-dispensing and generation facilities

2309.1 General. Hydrogen motor fuel-dispensing and generation facilities shall be in accordance with this section, Chapter 58 and NFPA 2. Where a fuel-dispensing facility includes a repair garage, the repair operation shall comply with Section 2311.

2309.2 Equipment. Equipment used for the generation, compression, storage or dispensing of hydrogen shall be designed for the specific application in accordance with Sections 2309.2.1 through 2309.2.3.

2309.2.1 Approved equipment. Cylinders, containers and tanks; pressure relief devices, including pressure valves; hydrogen vaporizers; pressure regulators; and piping used for gaseous hydrogen systems shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapters 53, 55 and 58.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2309.2.2 Listed or approved equipment. Hoses, hose connections, compressors, hydrogen generators, dispensers, motor-fueling connections and electrical equipment used for hydrogen shall be listed or approved for use with hydrogen.

2309.2.3 Electrical equipment. Electrical installations shall be in accordance with NFPA 70.

2309.3 Location on property. In addition to the requirements of Section 2303.1, dispensing equipment shall be located in accordance with Sections 2309.3.1 through 2309.3.2.

2309.3.1 Location of operations and equipment. Generation, compression, storage and dispensing equipment shall be located in accordance with Sections 2309.3.1.1 through 2309.3.1.5.5.

2309.3.1.1 Outdoors. Generation, compression, or storage equipment shall be allowed outdoors in accordance with Chapter 58 and NFPA 2.

2309.3.1.2 Indoors. Generation, compression, storage and dispensing equipment shall be located in indoor rooms or areas constructed in accordance with the requirements of the *building code*, the International Fuel Gas Code, the *mechanical code* and NFPA 2.

2309.3.1.2.1 Maintenance. Gaseous hydrogen systems and detection devices shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

2309.3.1.2.2 Smoking. Smoking shall be prohibited in hydrogen cutoff rooms. "No Smoking" signs shall be provided at all entrances to hydrogen fuel gas rooms.

2309.3.1.2.3 Ignition source control. Open flames, flame-producing devices and other sources of ignition shall be controlled in accordance with Chapter 58.

2309.3.1.2.4 Housekeeping. Hydrogen fuel gas rooms shall be kept free from combustible debris and storage.

2309.3.1.3 Gaseous hydrogen storage. Storage of gaseous hydrogen shall be in accordance with Chapters 53 and 58.

2309.3.1.4 Liquefied hydrogen storage. Storage of liquefied hydrogen shall be in accordance with Chapters 55 and 58.

2309.3.1.5 Canopy tops. Gaseous hydrogen compression and storage equipment located on top of motor fuel-dispensing facility canopies shall be in accordance with Sections 2309.3.1.5.1 through 2309.3.1.5.5, Chapters 53 and 58 and the International Fuel Gas Code.

2309.3.1.5.1 Construction. Canopies shall be constructed in accordance with the motor fuel-dispensing facility canopy requirements of Section 406.7 of the *building code*.

2309.3.1.5.2 Fire-extinguishing systems. Fuel-dispensing areas under canopies shall be equipped throughout with an approved automatic sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1. The design of the sprinkler system shall be not less than that required for Extra Hazard Group 2 occupancies. Operation of the

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

sprinkler system shall activate the emergency functions of Sections 2309.3.1.5.3 and 2309.3.1.5.4.

2309.3.1.5.3 Emergency discharge. Operation of the automatic sprinkler system shall activate an automatic emergency discharge system, which will discharge the hydrogen gas from the equipment on the canopy top through the vent pipe system.

2309.3.1.5.4 Emergency shutdown control. Operation of the automatic sprinkler system shall activate the emergency shutdown control required by Section 2309.5.3.

2309.3.1.5.5 Signage. Approved signage having 2-inch (51 mm) block letters shall be affixed at approved locations on the exterior of the canopy structure stating: CANOPY TOP HYDROGEN STORAGE.

2309.3.2 Canopies. Dispensing equipment need not be separated from canopies of Type I or II construction that are constructed in a manner that prevents the accumulation of hydrogen gas and in accordance with Section 406.7 of the *building code*.

2309.4 Dispensing into motor vehicles at hydrogen motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Hydrogen motor fuel-dispensing systems, including key, code and card lock dispensing systems, shall be limited to the filling of permanently mounted motor vehicle fuel tanks on hydrogen-powered vehicles.

In addition to the requirements in Section 2311, the owner of a hydrogen motor fuel-dispensing facility shall provide for the safe operation of the system by complying with this code and the fueling protocols in NFPA 2 and through the institution of a fire safety plan submitted in accordance with Section 404, the training of employees and operators who use and maintain the system in accordance with Section 406, and provisions for hazard communication in accordance with Section 407.

Exception: Filling of nonpermanently mounted storage containers or tanks for motor fuel-dispensing system testing purposes is permitted.

2309.4.1 Dispensing systems. Dispensing systems shall be equipped with an overpressure protection device set at not greater than 140 percent of the service pressure of the fueling nozzle it supplies.

2309.5 Safety precautions. Safety precautions at hydrogen motor fuel-dispensing and generation facilities shall be in accordance with Sections 2309.5.1 through 2309.5.3.1.

2309.5.1 Protection from vehicles. Guard posts or other approved means shall be provided to protect hydrogen storage systems and use areas subject to vehicular damage in accordance with Section 312.

2309.5.1.1 Vehicle fueling pad. The vehicle shall be fueled on noncoated concrete or other approved paving material having a resistance not exceeding 1 megohm as determined by the methodology specified in EN 1081.

2309.5.2 Emergency shutoff valves. A manual emergency shutoff valve shall be provided to shut down the flow of gas from the hydrogen supply to the piping system.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2309.5.2.1 Identification. Manual emergency shutoff valves shall be identified and the location shall be clearly visible, accessible and indicated by means of a sign.

2309.5.3 Emergency shutdown controls. In addition to the manual emergency shutoff valve required by Section 2309.5.2, a remotely located, manually activated emergency shutdown control shall be provided. An emergency shutdown control shall be located within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of, but not less than 25 feet (7620 mm) from, dispensers and hydrogen generators.

2309.5.3.1 System requirements. Activation of the emergency shutdown control shall automatically shut off the power supply to all hydrogen storage, compression and dispensing equipment; shut off natural gas or other fuel supply to the hydrogen generator; and close valves between the main supply and the compressor and between the storage containers and dispensing equipment.

2309.6 Repairs, purging, defueling and discharge. The repair, purging, defueling or discharge activities associated with hydrogen motor fuel dispensing and generation systems, storage tanks and the installation of the systems shall be in accordance with Chapters 53 and 58 and NFPA 2.

Exception: The motor vehicle fuel tank and the fuel supply piping from the motor vehicle fuel tank to the engine compartment on a motor vehicle or forklift unless the fuel tank is required to be defueled in accordance with Section 2311.8.11.

2309.6.1 Documented procedure. A documented procedure that explains the logic sequence for defueling or discharging operations shall be maintained on site and shall be provided to the fire code official upon request. The procedure shall include what actions the operator is required to take in the event of a low-pressure or high-pressure hydrogen release during discharging activity. Schematic design documents shall be maintained on site, illustrating the arrangement of piping, regulators and equipment settings. The schematic shall illustrate the piping and regulator arrangement and shall be shown in spatial relation to the location of the vehicle being defueled and, if applicable, to the compressor, storage vessels and emergency shutdown devices.

Section 2310 Marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities

2310.1 General. The construction of marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be in accordance with the *building code* and NFPA 30A. The storage of Class I, II or IIIA liquids at marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be in accordance with *this chapter* and *Chapter 57*. *Where underground storage of flammable or combustible liquids is impractical due to geological conditions of the site, shore tanks supplying marine service stations may be located aboveground in special enclosures, vaults or protected aboveground tanks which provide physical protection and fire-resistive protection as a unit, when approved by the fire code official. The request to install such aboveground tanks shall be accompanied by a site survey which supports the request. The survey shall be prepared by a registered professional engineer of the appropriate discipline.*

2310.2 Storage and handling. The storage and handling of Class I, II or IIIA liquids at marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be in accordance with Sections 2310.2.1 through 2310.2.3.

2310.2.1 Class I, II or IIIA liquid storage. Class I, II or IIIA liquids stored inside buildings used for marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be stored in approved containers or portable tanks. Storage of Class I liquids shall not exceed 10 gallons (38 L).

Exception: Storage in liquid storage rooms in accordance with Section 5704.3.7.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2310.2.2 Class II or IIIA liquid storage and dispensing. Class II or IIIA liquids stored or dispensed inside buildings used for marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be stored in and dispensed from approved containers or portable tanks. Storage of Class II and IIIA liquids shall not exceed 120 gallons (454 L).

2310.2.3 Heating equipment. Heating equipment installed in Class I, II or IIIA liquid storage or dispensing areas shall comply with Section 2301.6.

2310.3 Dispensing. The dispensing of liquid fuels at marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Sections 2310.3.1 through 2310.3.5.

2310.3.1 General. Wharves, piers or floats at marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be used exclusively for the dispensing or transfer of petroleum products to or from marine craft, except that transfer of essential ship stores is allowed.

2310.3.2 Supervision. Marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall have an attendant or supervisor who is fully aware of the operation, mechanics and hazards inherent to fueling of boats on duty whenever the facility is open for business. The attendant's primary function shall be to supervise, observe and control the dispensing of Class I, II or IIIA liquids or flammable gases.

2310.3.3 Hoses and nozzles. Dispensing of Class I, II or IIIA liquids into the fuel tanks of marine craft shall be by means of an approved hose equipped with a listed automatic-closing nozzle without a latch-open device.

Hoses used for dispensing or transferring Class I, II or IIIA liquids, when not in use, shall be reeled, racked or otherwise protected from mechanical damage.

2310.3.4 Portable containers. Dispensing of Class I, II or IIIA liquids into containers, other than fuel tanks, shall be in accordance with Section 2304.4.1.

2310.3.5 Liquefied petroleum gas. Liquefied petroleum gas cylinders shall not be filled at marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities unless approved. Storage facilities for LP-gas cylinders shall be provided *in accordance with Section* 2307.

2310.4 Fueling of marine vehicles at other than approved marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities. Fueling of floating marine craft at other than a marine motor fuel-dispensing facility shall comply with Sections 2310.4.1 and 2310.4.2.

2310.4.1 Class I liquid fuels. Fueling of floating marine craft with Class I fuels at other than a marine motor fuel-dispensing facility is prohibited.

2310.4.2 Class II or III liquid fuels. Fueling of floating marine craft with Class II or III fuels at other than a marine motor fuel-dispensing facility shall be in accordance with all of the following:

1. The premises and operations shall be approved by the fire code official.

2. Tank vehicles and fueling operations shall comply with Section 5706.6.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

3. The dispensing nozzle shall be of the listed automatic-closing type without a latch-open device.

4. Nighttime deliveries shall be made only in lighted areas.

5. The tank vehicle flasher lights shall be in operation while dispensing.

6. Fuel expansion space shall be left in each fuel tank to prevent overflow in the event of temperature increase.

2310.5 Fire prevention regulations. General fire safety regulations for marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Sections 2310.5.1 through 2310.5.7.

2310.5.1 Housekeeping. Marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be maintained in a neat and orderly manner. Accumulations of rubbish or waste oils in excessive amounts shall be prohibited.

2310.5.2 Spills. Spills of Class I, II or IIIA liquids at or on the water shall be reported immediately to the fire department and jurisdictional authorities.

2310.5.3 Rubbish containers. Containers with tight-fitting or self-closing lids shall be provided for temporary storage of combustible debris, rubbish and waste material. The rubbish containers shall be constructed entirely of materials that comply with any one of the following:

1. Noncombustible materials.

2. Materials that meet a peak rate of heat release not exceeding 300 kW/m^2 when tested in accordance with ASTM E1354 at an incident heat flux of 50 kW/m^2 in the horizontal orientation.

2310.5.4 Marine vessels and craft. Vessels or craft shall not be made fast to fuel docks serving other vessels or craft occupying a berth at a marine motor fuel-dispensing facility.

2310.5.5 Sources of ignition. Construction, maintenance, repair and reconditioning work involving the use of open flames, arcs or spark-producing devices shall not be performed at marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities or within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of the dispensing facilities, including piers, wharves or floats, except for emergency repair work approved in writing by the fire code official. Fueling shall not be conducted at the pier, wharf or float during the course of such emergency repairs.

2310.5.5.1 Smoking. Smoking or open flames shall be prohibited within 50 feet (15 240 mm) of fueling operations. “No Smoking” signs complying with Section 310 shall be posted conspicuously about the premises. Such signs shall have letters not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in height on a background of contrasting color.

2310.5.6 Preparation of tanks for fueling. Boat owners and operators shall not offer their craft for fueling unless the tanks being filled are properly vented to dissipate fumes to the outside atmosphere.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2310.5.7 Warning signs. Warning signs shall be prominently displayed at the face of each wharf, pier or float at such elevation as to be clearly visible from the decks of marine craft being fueled. Such signs shall have letters not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in height on a background of contrasting color bearing the following or approved equivalent wording:

WARNING
NO SMOKING-STOP ENGINE WHILE FUELING,
SHUT OFF ELECTRICITY.

DO NOT START ENGINE UNTIL AFTER BELOW
DECK SPACES ARE VENTILATED.

2310.6 Fire protection. Fire protection features for marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall comply with Sections 2310.6.1 through 2310.6.4.

2310.6.1 Standpipe hose stations. Fire hose, where provided, shall be enclosed within a cabinet, and hose stations shall be labeled: FIRE HOSE-EMERGENCY USE ONLY.

2310.6.2 Obstruction of fire protection equipment. Materials shall not be placed on a pier in such a manner as to obstruct access to fire-fighting equipment or piping system control valves.

2310.6.3 Access. Where the pier is designed for vehicular traffic, an unobstructed roadway to the shore end of the wharf shall be maintained for access by fire apparatus.

2310.6.4 Portable fire extinguishers. Portable fire extinguishers in accordance with Section 906, each having a minimum rating of 20-B:C, shall be provided as follows:

1. One on each float.

2. One on the pier or wharf within 25 feet (7620 mm) of the head of the gangway to the float, unless the office is within 25 feet (7620 mm) of the gangway or is on the float and an extinguisher is provided thereon.

Section 2311 Repair garages

2311.1 General. Repair garages shall comply with this section and the *building code*. Repair garages for vehicles that use more than one type of fuel shall comply with the applicable provisions of this section for each type of fuel used.

Where a repair garage includes a motor fuel-dispensing facility, the fuel-dispensing operation shall comply with the requirements of this chapter for motor fuel-dispensing facilities.

2311.2 Storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids. The storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids in repair garages shall comply with Chapter 57 and Sections 2311.2.1 through 2311.2.4.

2311.2.1 Cleaning of parts. Cleaning of parts shall be conducted in approved parts-cleaning machines in accordance with Chapter 57.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2311.2.2 Waste oil, motor oil and other Class IIIB liquids. Waste oil, motor oil and other Class IIIB liquids shall be stored in tanks or containers *approved in accordance with Chapter 57*, which are allowed to be stored and dispensed from inside repair garages.

2311.2.2.1 Tank location. Tanks storing Class IIIB liquids in repair garages are allowed to be located at, below or above grade, provided that adequate drainage or containment is provided.

2311.2.2.2 Liquid classification. Crankcase drainings shall be classified as Class IIIB liquids unless otherwise determined by testing.

2311.2.3 Drainage and disposal of liquids and oil-soaked waste. Garage floor drains, where provided, shall drain to oil separators or traps discharging to a sewer in accordance with the *plumbing code*. Contents of oil separators, traps and floor drainage systems shall be collected at sufficiently frequent intervals and removed from the premises to prevent oil from being carried into the sewers.

2311.2.3.1 Disposal of liquids. Crankcase drainings and liquids shall not be dumped into sewers, streams or on the ground, but shall be stored in tanks or containers in accordance with Chapter 57 until removed from the premises.

2311.2.3.2 Disposal of oily waste. Self-closing metal cans shall be used for oily waste.

2311.2.4 Spray finishing. Spray finishing with flammable or combustible liquids shall comply with Chapter 24.

2311.3 Sources of ignition. Sources of ignition shall not be located within 18 inches (457 mm) of the floor and shall comply with Chapters 3 and 35.

2311.3.1 Equipment. Appliances and equipment installed in a repair garage shall comply with the provisions of the *building code*, the *mechanical code* and NFPA 70.

2311.3.2 Smoking. Smoking shall not be allowed in repair garages except in approved locations.

2311.4 Below-grade areas. Pits and below-grade work areas in repair garages shall comply with Sections 2311.4.1 through 2311.4.3.

2311.4.1 Construction. Pits and below-grade work areas shall be constructed in accordance with the *building code*.

2311.4.2 Means of egress. Pits and below-grade work areas shall be provided with means of egress in accordance with Chapter 10.

2311.4.3 Ventilation. Where Class I liquids or LP-gas are stored or used within a building having a basement or pit wherein flammable vapors could accumulate, the basement or pit shall be provided with mechanical ventilation in accordance with the *mechanical code*, at a minimum rate of 1½ cubic feet per minute per square foot (cfm/ft^2) [0.008 m^3/(s●m^2)] to prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2311.5 Vehicles powered by liquefied petroleum gas (LP-gas). Vehicles powered by LP-gas and the servicing of vehicles powered by LP-gas shall be in compliance with this chapter, Chapter 61 of this code and NFPA 58.

2311.6 Vehicles powered by liquefied natural gas (LNG) and compressed natural gas (CNG). LNG vehicles and CNG vehicles shall comply with Sections 2311.6.1 and 2311.6.2, as applicable.

2311.6.1 Liquefied natural gas (LNG). LNG vehicle fuel system pressure shall be measured and recorded prior to entering the repair facility. The maximum allowable system pressure shall be not more than 170 psig (1172 kPa). Pressure greater than 170 psig (1172 kPa) shall be reduced by operating the vehicle or limited venting outdoors, as required.

2311.6.2 Compressed natural gas (CNG). CNG vehicle fuel system pressure and the ambient temperature shall be measured and recorded prior to entering the repair facility. Pressure greater than the indicated maximum pressure in accordance with Table 2311.6.2 shall be reduced by defueling the vehicle.

Table 2311.6.2
Temperature compensated cylinder pressure table[a]

Gas temperature °F	Pressure in full 3,600 psi CNG container, psig
123.6	4,500
120	4,455
110	4,272
100	4,105
90	3,936
80	3,768
70	3,600
60	3,432
50	3,263
40	3,094
30	2,926
20	2,757
10	2,589
0	2,421
-10	2,253
-20	2,086
-30	1,919
-40	1,753

For SI: °C = [(°F)-32]/1.8, 1 psig = 6.895 kPa.

a. 3,600 psi service pressure calculated from the standard gas composition used to create the gasoline gallon equivalent (GGE).

2311.7 Fire extinguishers. Fire extinguishers shall be provided in accordance with Section 906.

2311.8 Repair garages for vehicles fueled by lighter-than-air fuels. The room, motor vehicle repair booth or motor vehicle repair space containing repair garage activities for the conversion or repair of vehicles that use CNG, LNG, hydrogen or other lighter-than-air motor fuels shall be in

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

accordance with Sections 2311.8 through 2311.8.11 in addition to the other requirements of Section 2311.

Repair garages for the repair of vehicles that use hydrogen fuel shall be in accordance with this code and NFPA 2.

Exceptions:

1. Repair garages where work is conducted only on vehicles where the motor vehicle fuel tank and system have been defueled and the motor vehicle fuel tank has been purged with nitrogen gas, and where standard operating procedures to document and maintain the fueling status throughout repair operations are approved.

2. Repair garages where work is not performed on the fuel system and is limited to exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the CNG-, LNG-, hydrogen- or other lighter-than-air-fueled motor vehicle. Movement of a subassembly on which the motor vehicle fuel tank remains mounted to allow access to other parts of the vehicle that are not a portion of the fuel system shall be permitted.

3. Repair garages for hydrogen-fueled vehicles where work is not performed on the motor vehicle fuel tank and is limited to the exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the hydrogen-fueled vehicle. During the work, the entire hydrogen fuel system shall contain less than 400 cubic feet (11.3m^3) of hydrogen.

4. Repair garages for natural-gas-fueled vehicles where work is not being performed on the motor vehicle fuel tank and is limited to the exchange of parts and maintenance not requiring open flame or welding on the natural-gas-fueled vehicle. During the work, the natural gas, in the motor vehicle fuel tank shall contain a pressure of not more than 250 psi at 70°F (1724 kPa at 21°C).

2311.8.1 Preparation of vehicles for repair. For vehicles powered by gaseous fuels, the fuel shutoff valves shall be closed prior to repairing any portion of the vehicle fuel system.

Vehicles powered by gaseous fuels in which the fuel system has been damaged shall be inspected and evaluated for fuel system integrity prior to being brought into the repair garage. The inspection shall include testing of the entire fuel delivery system for leakage.

2311.8.2 Repair garages used for the repair of hydrogen-fueled vehicles. Repair garages used for the repair of hydrogen-fueled vehicles shall be provided with an approved exhaust ventilation system in accordance with the *mechanical code* and Chapter 6 of NFPA 2.

2311.8.3 Motor vehicle repair rooms. Motor vehicle repair rooms shall be enclosed with not less than 1-hour fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *building code*, or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *building code*, or both, with 1-hour rated opening protectives.

2311.8.4 Motor vehicle repair booths. The design and construction of motor vehicle repair booths shall be in accordance with Sections 2311.8.4.1 through 2311.8.4.4.

2311.8.4.1 Construction. Motor vehicle repair booths shall be constructed of approved noncombustible materials. Where walls or ceiling assemblies are constructed of sheet

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

metal, single-skin assemblies shall be not thinner than 0.0478 inch (18 gage) (1.2 mm) and each sheet of double-skin assemblies shall be not thinner than 0.0359 inch (20 gage) (0.9 mm). Structural sections of motor vehicle repair booths shall be sealed in an approved manner.

2311.8.4.2 Surfaces. The interior surfaces of motor vehicle repair booths shall be constructed to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior.

2311.8.4.3 Means of egress. Means of egress shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 10.

Exception: Means of egress doors from premanufactured motor vehicle repair booths shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width by 80 inches (2032 mm) in height.

2311.8.4.4 Clear space. Motor vehicle repair booths shall be installed so that all parts of the booth be provided with ready access for cleaning. A clear area of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) wide shall be maintained on all sides of the motor vehicle repair booth. This clear area shall be kept free of any storage or combustible construction.

Exceptions:

1. This requirement shall not prohibit locating a motor vehicle repair booth closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to or directly against an interior partition, wall or floor/ceiling assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, provided that the motor vehicle repair booth can be adequately maintained and cleaned.

2. This requirement shall not prohibit locating a motor vehicle repair booth closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an exterior wall or a roof assembly, provided that the wall or roof is constructed of noncombustible material and the motor vehicle repair booth can be adequately maintained and cleaned.

2311.8.5 Motor vehicle repair spaces. Where such spaces are not separately enclosed, noncombustible spray curtains shall be provided to restrict the spread of flammable gases.

2311.8.6 Fire protection. Motor vehicle repair booths or spaces installed in a room or area protected by an automatic sprinkler system shall have the protection extended to include the inside of the motor vehicle repair booth or space.

2311.8.7 Fire extinguishers. Portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 shall be provided for motor vehicle repair rooms, motor vehicle repair booths or motor vehicle repair spaces.

2311.8.8 Exhaust ventilation. Repair garages used for the repair of CNG, LNG, or other lighter-than-air motor fuels other than hydrogen shall be provided with *a* mechanical ventilation system. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall be in accordance with the *mechanical code* and Sections 2311.8.8.1 and 2311.8.8.2.

Exception: Where approved by the fire code official, natural ventilation shall be permitted in lieu of mechanical exhaust ventilation.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2311.8.8.1 Design. For indoor locations, air supply inlets and exhaust outlets for mechanical ventilation shall be arranged to provide uniformly distributed air movement with inlets uniformly arranged on walls near floor level and outlets at the high point of the room in walls or the roof.

Failure of the ventilation system shall cause the fueling system to shut down.

The exhaust ventilation rate shall be not less than 1 cubic foot per minute (0.03 m^3/minute) per 12 cubic feet (34 m^3) of room volume.

2311.8.8.2 Operation. The mechanical exhaust ventilation system shall operate continuously.

Exceptions:

1. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems that are interlocked with a gas detection system designed in accordance with Sections 2311.8.9 through 2311.8.9.2.

2. Mechanical exhaust ventilation systems in repair garages that are used only for repair of vehicles fueled by liquid fuels or odorized gases, such as CNG, where the ventilation system is electrically interlocked with the lighting circuit.

2311.8.9 Gas detection system. Repair garages used for repair of vehicles fueled by nonodorized gases including, but not limited to, hydrogen and nonodorized LNG, shall be provided with a gas detection system that complies with Section 916. The gas detection system shall be designed to detect leakage of nonodorized gaseous fuel. Where lubrication or chassis service pits are provided in garages used for repairing nonodorized LNG-fueled vehicles, gas sensors shall be provided in such pits.

2311.8.9.1 System activation. Activation of the gas detection alarm shall result in all of the following:

1. Initiation of local audible and visual alarms in approved locations.

2. Deactivation of heating systems located in the repair garage.

3. Activation of the mechanical exhaust ventilation system, where the ventilation system is interlocked with gas detection.

2311.8.9.2 Failure of the gas detection system. Failure of the gas detection system shall automatically deactivate the heating system, activate the mechanical exhaust ventilation system where the system is interlocked with the gas detection system and cause a trouble signal to sound in an *occupied area or other location approved by the fire code official*.

2311.8.10 Classified electrical area. Areas within 18 inches (450 mm) of a ceiling within a motor vehicle repair room or motor vehicle repair booth shall be designed and installed in accordance with the requirements for Class I, Division 2 classified locations, as set forth in NFPA 70.

Exceptions:

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1. Rooms with exhaust ventilation of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot (0.3 $m^3/min/m^2$) of floor area, with suction taken from a point within 18 inches (450 mm) of the highest point in the ceiling in repair garages for vehicles that use CNG, liquefied natural gas (LNG) or other lighter-than-air motor fuels.

2. Rooms used for the repair of hydrogen-fueled vehicles that have an approved exhaust ventilation system in accordance with the *mechanical code* and NFPA 2.

2311.8.11 Defueling equipment required at vehicle maintenance and repair facilities. Facilities for repairing or replacing hydrogen fuel tanks on hydrogen-fueled vehicles shall have equipment to defuel vehicle storage tanks. Where work must be performed on a motor vehicle's fuel tank for the purpose of maintenance, repair or cylinder certification, defueling and purging shall be conducted in accordance with Section 2309.6 and NFPA 2.

Section 2312 Service station at a bulk plant or terminal

2312.1 General. *That portion of a bulk plant property where flammable or combustible liquids are stored and dispensed from fixed equipment into the fuel tanks of motor vehicles, marine craft or approved containers shall comply with this section and NFPA 30A.*

Exception: *The dispensing of diesel fuel at a terminal or bulk plant into a motor vehicle that is transporting petroleum products or equipment essential to the operation of the terminal or bulk plant, provided that the motor vehicle is owned or leased by or operated under a contract with a person who has been issued a motor fuel dealers license under Section 5735.02 of the Revised Code. For such dispensing, the provisions of this rule governing capacity limitations shall not apply.*

2312.2 Separation. *All equipment utilized in connection with the storage and dispensing operations of a motor fuel-dispensing facility shall be separated by a minimum of 100 feet from the area in which aboveground bulk plant operations are conducted and by a security fence. Any gates in the required fence shall be secured against unauthorized entry.*

2312.3 Independent operations. *Motor fuel-dispensing facility operations shall be totally independent of the bulk plant operations to include:*

1. *Above-ground tanks located in the bulk plant shall not supply dispensing devices at the motor fuel-dispensing facility.*

2. *Storage tanks at the motor fuel-dispensing facility shall not be connected by piping to aboveground tanks located in the bulk plant.*

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1301:7-7-24 Flammable finishes.

Section 2401 General

2401.1 Scope. This chapter shall apply to locations or areas where any of the following activities are conducted:

1. The application of flammable finishes to articles or materials by means of spray apparatus.
2. The application of flammable finishes by dipping or immersing articles or materials into the contents of tanks, vats or containers of flammable or combustible liquids for coating, finishing, treatment or similar processes.
3. The application of flammable finishes by applying combustible powders to articles or materials utilizing powder spray guns, electrostatic powder spray guns, fluidized beds or electrostatic fluidized beds.
4. Floor surfacing or finishing operations using Class I or II liquids in areas exceeding 350 square feet (32.5 m^2).
5. The application of flammable finishes consisting of dual-component coatings or Class I or II liquids where applied by brush or roller in quantities exceeding 1 gallon (4 L).

2401.2 Nonapplicability. This chapter shall not apply to spray finishing utilizing flammable or combustible liquids that do not sustain combustion, including:

1. Liquids that do not have a fire point when tested in accordance with ASTM D92.
2. Liquids with a flashpoint greater than 95°F (35°C) in a water-miscible solution or dispersion with a water and inert (noncombustible) solids content of more than 80 percent by weight.

2401.3 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

Section 2402 Definitions

2402.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2.

Detearing.

Dip tank.

Electrostatic fluidized bed.

Flammable finishes.

Flammable vapor area.

Fluidized bed.

Limited spraying space.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Resin application area.

Roll coating.

Spray booth.

Spray room.

Spraying space.

Section 2403 Protection of operations

2403.1 General. Operations covered by this chapter shall be protected as required by Sections 2403.2 through 2403.4.4.

2403.2 Sources of ignition. Protection against sources of ignition shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2403.2.1 through 2403.2.8.

2403.2.1 Electrical wiring and equipment. Electrical wiring and equipment shall comply with this chapter and NFPA 70.

2403.2.1.1 Flammable vapor areas. Electrical wiring and equipment in flammable vapor areas shall be of an explosionproof type approved for use in such hazardous locations. Such areas shall be considered to be Class I, Division 1 or Class II, Division 1 hazardous locations in accordance with NFPA 70.

2403.2.1.2 Areas subject to deposits of residues. Electrical equipment, flammable vapor areas or drying operations that are subject to splashing or dripping of liquids shall be specifically approved for locations containing deposits of readily ignitable residue and explosive vapors.

Exceptions:

1. This provision shall not apply to wiring in rigid conduit, threaded boxes or fittings not containing taps, splices or terminal connections.

2. This provision shall not apply to electrostatic equipment allowed by Section 2407.

In resin application areas, electrical wiring and equipment that is subject to deposits of combustible residues shall be listed for such exposure and shall be installed as required for hazardous (classified) locations. Electrical wiring and equipment not subject to deposits of combustible residues shall be installed as required for ordinary hazard locations.

2403.2.1.3 Areas adjacent to spray booths. Electrical wiring and equipment located outside of, but within 3 feet (914 mm) of openings in a spray booth or a spray room, shall be approved for Class I, Division 2 or Class II, Division 2 hazardous locations, whichever is applicable.

2403.2.1.4 Areas subject to overspray deposits. Electrical equipment in flammable vapor areas located such that deposits of combustible residues could readily accumulate

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

thereon shall be specifically approved for locations containing deposits of readily ignitable residue and explosive vapors in accordance with NFPA 70.

Exceptions:

1. Wiring in rigid conduit.

2. Boxes or fittings not containing taps, splices or terminal connections.

3. Equipment allowed by Sections 2404 and 2407 and Chapter 30.

2403.2.2 Open flames and sparks. Open flames and spark-producing devices shall not be located in flammable vapor areas and shall not be located within 20 feet (6096 mm) of such areas unless separated by a permanent partition.

Exception: Drying and baking apparatus complying with Section 2404.6.1.2.

2403.2.3 Hot surfaces. Heated surfaces having a temperature sufficient to ignite vapors shall not be located in flammable vapor areas. Space-heating appliances, steam pipes or hot surfaces in a flammable vapor area shall be located such that they are not subject to accumulation of deposits of combustible residues.

Exception: Drying apparatus complying with Section 2404.6.1.2.

2403.2.4 Equipment enclosures. Equipment or apparatus that is capable of producing sparks or particles of hot metal that would fall into a flammable vapor area shall be totally enclosed.

2403.2.5 Grounding. Metal parts of spray booths, exhaust ducts and piping systems conveying Class I or II liquids shall be electrically grounded in accordance with NFPA 70. Metallic parts located in resin application areas, including but not limited to exhaust ducts, ventilation fans, spray application equipment, workpieces and piping, shall be electrically grounded.

2403.2.6 Smoking prohibited. Smoking shall be prohibited in flammable vapor areas and hazardous materials storage rooms associated with flammable finish processes. "No Smoking" signs complying with Section 310 shall be conspicuously posted in such areas.

2403.2.7 Welding warning signs. Welding, cutting and similar spark-producing operations shall not be conducted in or adjacent to flammable vapor areas or dipping or coating operations unless precautions have been taken to provide safety. Conspicuous signs with the following warning shall be posted in the vicinity of flammable vapor areas, dipping operations and paint storage rooms:

NO WELDING
THE USE OF WELDING OR CUTTING EQUIPMENT IN OR NEAR THIS AREA IS DANGEROUS BECAUSE OF FIRE AND EXPLOSION HAZARDS. WELDING AND CUTTING SHALL BE DONE ONLY UNDER THE SUPERVISION OF THE PERSON IN CHARGE.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2403.2.8 Powered industrial trucks. Powered industrial trucks used in electrically classified areas shall be listed for such use.

2403.3 Storage, use and handling of flammable and combustible liquids. The storage, use and handling of flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with this section and Chapter 57.

2403.3.1 Use. Containers supplying spray nozzles shall be of a closed type or provided with metal covers that are kept closed. Containers not resting on floors shall be on noncombustible supports or suspended by wire cables. Containers supplying spray nozzles by gravity flow shall not exceed 10 gallons (37.9 L) in capacity.

2403.3.2 Valves. Containers and piping to which a hose or flexible connection is attached shall be provided with a shutoff valve at the connection. Such valves shall be kept shut when hoses are not in use.

2403.3.3 Pumped liquid supplies. Where flammable or combustible liquids are supplied to spray nozzles by positive displacement pumps, pump discharge lines shall be provided with an approved relief valve discharging to pump suction or a safe detached location.

2403.3.4 Liquid transfer. Where a flammable mixture is transferred from one portable container to another, a bond shall be provided between the two containers. Not less than one container shall be grounded. Piping systems for Class I and II liquids shall be permanently grounded.

2403.3.5 Class I liquids as solvents. Class I liquids used as solvents shall be used in spray gun and equipment cleaning machines that have been listed and approved for such purpose or shall be used in spray booths or spray rooms in accordance with Sections 2403.3.5.1 and 2403.3.5.2.

2403.3.5.1 Listed devices. Cleaning machines for spray guns and equipment shall not be located in areas open to the public and shall be separated from ignition sources in accordance with their listings or by a distance of 3 feet (914 mm), whichever is greater. The quantity of solvent used in a machine shall not exceed the design capacity of the machine.

2403.3.5.2 Within spray booths and spray rooms. Where solvents are used for cleaning spray nozzles and auxiliary equipment within spray booths and spray rooms, the ventilating equipment shall be operated during cleaning.

2403.3.6 Class II and III liquids. Solvents used outside of spray booths, spray rooms or listed and approved spray gun and equipment cleaning machines shall be restricted to Class II and III liquids.

2403.4 Operations and maintenance. Flammable vapor areas, exhaust fan blades and exhaust ducts shall be kept free from the accumulation of deposits of combustible residues. Where excessive residue accumulates in such areas, spraying operations shall be discontinued until conditions are corrected.

2403.4.1 Tools. Scrapers, spuds and other tools used for cleaning purposes shall be constructed of nonsparking materials.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2403.4.2 Residue. Residues removed during cleaning and debris contaminated with residue shall be immediately removed from the premises and properly disposed.

2403.4.3 Waste cans. Approved metal waste cans equipped with self-closing lids shall be provided wherever rags or waste are impregnated with finishing material. Such rags and waste shall be deposited therein immediately after being utilized. The contents of waste cans shall be properly disposed of not less than once daily and at the end of each shift.

2403.4.4 Solvent recycling. Solvent distillation equipment used to recycle and clean dirty solvents shall comply with Section 5705.4.

Section 2404 Spray finishing

2404.1 General. The application of flammable or combustible liquids by means of spray apparatus in continuous or intermittent processes shall be in accordance with the requirements of Sections 2403 and 2404.2 through 2404.9.4.

2404.2 Location of spray-finishing operations. Spray-finishing operations conducted in buildings used for Group A, E, I or R occupancies shall be located in a spray room protected with an approved automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 and separated vertically and horizontally from the remainder of the building by fire barrier walls and horizontal assemblies with not less than 1-hour fire-resistance rating in accordance with the *building code*. In other occupancies, spray-finishing operations shall be conducted in a spray room, spray booth or limited spraying space approved for such use.

Exceptions:

1. Automobile undercoating spray operations and spray-on automotive lining operations conducted in areas with approved natural or mechanical ventilation shall be exempt from the provisions of Section 2404 when approved and where utilizing Class IIIA or IIIB combustible liquids.

2. In buildings other than Group A, E, I or R occupancies, approved limited spraying space in accordance with Section 2404.9.

3. Resin application areas used for manufacturing of reinforced plastics complying with Section 2409 shall not be required to be located in a spray room, spray booth or spraying space.

2404.3 Design and construction. Design and construction of spray rooms, spray booths and spray spaces shall be in accordance with Sections 2404.3.1 through 2404.3.3.1.

2404.3.1 Spray rooms. Spray rooms shall be constructed and designed in accordance with Section 416 of the *building code* and Section 2404.3.2 of this code, and shall comply with Sections 2404.4 through 2404.8 of this code.

2404.3.2 Floor. Combustible floor construction in spray rooms shall be covered by approved, noncombustible, nonsparking material, except where combustible coverings, including but not limited to thin paper or plastic and strippable coatings, are utilized over noncombustible materials to facilitate cleaning operations in spray rooms.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2404.3.3 Spray booths. The design and construction of spray booths shall be in accordance with Sections 2404.3.3.1 through 2404.3.3.6, Sections 2404.4 through 2404.8 and NFPA 33.

2404.3.3.1 Construction. Spray booths shall be constructed of approved noncombustible materials. Aluminum shall not be used. Where walls or ceiling assemblies are constructed of sheet metal, single-skin assemblies shall be not thinner than 0.0478 inch (18 gage) (1.2 mm) and each sheet of double-skin assemblies shall be not thinner than 0.0359 inch (20 gage) (0.9 mm). Structural sections of spray booths are allowed to be sealed with latex-based or similar caulks and sealants.

2404.3.3.2 Surfaces. The interior surfaces of spray booths shall be smooth; shall be constructed so as to permit the free passage of exhaust air from all parts of the interior, and to facilitate washing and cleaning; and shall be designed to confine residues within the booth. Aluminum shall not be used.

2404.3.3.3 Floor. Combustible floor construction in spray booths shall be covered by approved, noncombustible, nonsparking material, except where combustible coverings, including but not limited to thin paper or plastic and strippable coatings, are utilized over noncombustible materials to facilitate cleaning operations in spray booths.

2404.3.3.4 Means of egress. Means of egress shall be provided in accordance with Chapter 10.

Exception: Means of egress doors from premanufactured spray booths shall be not less than 30 inches (762 mm) in width by 80 inches (2032 mm) in height.

2404.3.3.5 Clear space. Spray booths shall be installed so that all parts of the booth are able to be accessed for cleaning. A clear space of not less than 3 feet (914 mm) shall be maintained on all sides of the spray booth. This clear space shall be kept free of any storage or combustible construction.

Exceptions:

1. This requirement shall not prohibit locating a spray booth closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to or directly against an interior partition, wall or floor/ceiling assembly that has a fire-resistance rating of not less than 1 hour, provided that the spray booth can be adequately maintained and cleaned.

2. This requirement shall not prohibit locating a spray booth closer than 3 feet (914 mm) to an exterior wall or a roof assembly, provided that the wall or roof is constructed of noncombustible material and the spray booth can be adequately maintained and cleaned.

2404.3.3.6 Size. The aggregate area of spray booths in a building shall not exceed the lesser of 10 percent of the area of any floor of a building or the basic area allowed for a Group H-2 occupancy without area increases, as set forth in the *building code*.

Exception: One individual booth not exceeding 500 square feet (46 m^2).

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2404.3.4 Spraying spaces. Spraying spaces shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *building code*, 2404.3.4.1 and Sections 2404.4 through 2404.8.

2404.3.4.1 Floor. Combustible floor construction in spraying spaces shall be covered by approved, noncombustible, nonsparking material, except where combustible coverings, such as thin paper or plastic and strippable coatings, are utilized over noncombustible materials to facilitate cleaning operations in spraying spaces.

2404.4 Fire protection. Spray booths and spray rooms shall be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system complying with Chapter 9. Protection shall extend to exhaust plenums, exhaust ducts and both sides of dry filters where such filters are used.

2404.4.1 Fire extinguishers. Portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 shall be provided for spraying areas in accordance with the requirements for an extra (high) hazard occupancy.

2404.5 Housekeeping, maintenance and storage of hazardous materials. Housekeeping, maintenance, storage and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 2403.3, 2403.4, 2404.5.1 and 2404.5.2.

2404.5.1 Different coatings. Spray booths, spray rooms and spraying spaces shall not be alternately utilized for different types of coating materials where the combination of materials is conducive to spontaneous ignition, unless all deposits of one material are removed from the booth, room or space and exhaust ducts prior to spraying with a different material.

2404.5.2 Protection of sprinklers. Automatic sprinklers installed in flammable vapor areas shall be protected from the accumulation of residue from spraying operations in an approved manner. Bags used as a protective covering shall be 0.003-inch-thick (0.076 mm) polyethylene or cellophane or shall be thin paper. Automatic sprinklers contaminated by overspray particles shall be replaced with new automatic sprinklers.

2404.6 Sources of ignition. Control of sources of ignition shall be in accordance with Section 2403.2 and Sections 2404.6.1 through 2404.6.2.4.

2404.6.1 Drying operations. Spray booths and spray rooms shall not be alternately used for the purpose of drying by arrangements or methods that could cause an increase in the surface temperature of the spray booth or spray room except in accordance with Sections 2404.6.1.1 and 2404.6.1.2. Except as specifically provided in this section, drying or baking units utilizing a heating system having open flames or that are capable of producing sparks shall not be installed in a flammable vapor *area*.

2404.6.1.1 Spraying procedure. The spraying procedure shall use low-volume spray application.

2404.6.1.2 Drying apparatus. Fixed drying apparatus shall comply with this chapter and the applicable provisions of Chapter 30. Where recirculation ventilation is provided in accordance with Section 2404.7.2, the heating system shall not be within the recirculation air path.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2404.6.1.2.1 Interlocks. The spraying apparatus, drying apparatus and ventilating system for the spray booth or spray room shall be equipped with interlocks arranged to accomplish all of the following:

1. Prevent operation of the spraying apparatus while drying operations are in progress.

2. Where the drying apparatus is located in the spray booth or spray room, prevent operation of the drying apparatus until a timed purge of spray vapors from the spray booth or spray room is complete. This purge time shall be based on completing not fewer than four air changes of spray booth or spray room volume for a period of not less than 3 minutes, whichever is greater.

3. Have the ventilating system maintain a safe atmosphere within the spray booth or spray room during the drying process and automatically shut off drying apparatus in the event of a failure of the ventilating system.

4. Shut off the drying apparatus automatically if the air temperature within the booth exceeds 200°F (93°C).

2404.6.1.2.2 Portable infrared apparatus. Where a portable infrared drying apparatus is used, electrical wiring and portable infrared drying equipment shall comply with NFPA 70. Electrical equipment located within 18 inches (457 mm) of floor level shall be approved for Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations. Metallic parts of drying apparatus shall be electrically bonded and grounded. During spraying operations, portable drying apparatus and electrical connections and wiring thereto shall not be located within spray booths, spray rooms or other areas where spray residue would be deposited thereon.

2404.6.2 Illumination. Where spraying spaces, spray rooms or spray booths are illuminated through glass panels or other transparent materials, only fixed luminaires shall be utilized as a source of illumination.

2404.6.2.1 Glass panels. Panels for luminaires or for observation shall be of heat-treated glass, wired glass or hammered wire glass and shall be sealed to confine vapors, mists, residues, dusts and deposits to the flammable vapor area. Panels for luminaires shall be separated from the luminaire to prevent the surface temperature of the panel from exceeding 200°F (93°C).

2404.6.2.2 Exterior luminaires. Luminaires attached to the walls or ceilings of a flammable vapor area, but outside of any classified area and separated from the flammable vapor areas by vapor-tight glass panels, shall be suitable for use in ordinary hazard locations. Such luminaires shall be serviced from outside the flammable vapor areas.

2404.6.2.3 Integral luminaires. Luminaires that are an integral part of the walls or ceiling of a flammable vapor area are allowed to be separated from the flammable vapor area by glass panels that are an integral part of the luminaire. Such luminaires shall be listed for use in Class I, Division 2 or Class II, Division 2 locations, whichever is applicable, and shall be suitable for accumulations of deposits of combustible residues. Such luminaires are allowed to be serviced from inside the flammable vapor area.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2404.6.2.4 Portable electric lamps. Portable electric lamps shall not be used in flammable vapor areas during spraying operations. Portable electric lamps used during cleaning or repairing operations shall be of a type approved for hazardous locations.

2404.7 Ventilation. Mechanical ventilation of flammable vapor areas shall be provided in accordance with Section 502.7 of the *mechanical code*.

2404.7.1 Operation. Mechanical ventilation shall be kept in operation at all times while spraying operations are being conducted and for a sufficient time thereafter to allow vapors from drying coated articles and finishing material residue to be exhausted. Spraying equipment shall be interlocked with the ventilation of the flammable vapor areas such that spraying operations cannot be conducted unless the ventilation system is in operation.

2404.7.2 Recirculation. Air exhausted from spraying operations shall not be recirculated.

Exceptions:

1. Air exhausted from spraying operations is allowed to be recirculated as makeup air for unmanned spray operations, provided that all of the following conditions exist:

   1.1 The solid particulate has been removed.

   1.2 The vapor concentration is less than 25 percent of the LFL.

   1.3 Approved equipment is used to monitor the vapor concentration.

   1.4 When the vapor concentration exceeds 25 percent of the LFL, both of the following shall occur:

      1.4.1 An alarm shall sound.

      1.4.2 Spray operations shall automatically shut down.

   1.5 In the event of shutdown of the vapor concentration monitor, 100 percent of the air volume specified in Section 510 of the *mechanical code* is automatically exhausted.

2. Air exhausted from spraying operations is allowed to be recirculated as makeup air to manned spraying operations where all of the conditions provided in Exception 1 are included in the installation and documents have been prepared to show that the installation does not pose a life safety hazard to personnel inside the spray booth, spraying space or spray room.

2404.7.3 Air velocity. The ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the flammable contaminants are diluted in noncontaminated air to maintain concentrations in the exhaust airflow below 25 percent of the contaminant's lower flammable limit (LFL). In addition, the spray booth shall be provided with mechanical ventilation so that the average air velocity through openings is in accordance with Sections 2404.7.3.1 and 2404.7.3.2.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2404.7.3.1 Open-face or open-front spray booth. For spray application operations conducted in an open-face or open-front spray booth, the ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings is not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s).

Exception: For fixed or automated electrostatic spray application equipment, the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings shall be not less than 50 feet per minute (0.25 m/s).

2404.7.3.2 Enclosed spray booth or spray room with openings for product conveyance. For spray application operations conducted in an enclosed spray booth or spray room with openings for product conveyance, the ventilation system shall be designed, installed and maintained so that the average air velocity into the spray booth through openings is not less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s).

Exceptions:

1. For fixed or automated electrostatic spray application equipment, the average air velocity into the spray booth through all openings shall be not less than 50 feet per minute (0.25 m/s).

2. Where methods are used to reduce cross drafts that can draw vapors and overspray through openings from the spray booth or spray room, the average air velocity into the spray booth or spray room shall be that necessary to capture and confine vapors and overspray to the spray booth or spray room.

2404.7.4 Ventilation obstruction. Articles being sprayed shall be positioned in a manner that does not obstruct collection of overspray.

2404.7.5 Independent ducts. Each spray booth and spray room shall have an independent exhaust duct system discharging to the outside.

Exceptions:

1. Multiple spray booths having a combined frontal area of 18 square feet (1.67 m^2) or less are allowed to have a common exhaust where identical spray finishing material is used in each booth. If more than one fan serves one booth, fans shall be interconnected such that all fans will operate simultaneously.

2. Where treatment of exhaust is necessary for air pollution control or for energy conservation, ducts shall be allowed to be manifolded if all of the following conditions are met:

   2.1 The sprayed materials used are compatible and will not react or cause ignition of the residue in the ducts.

   2.2 Nitrocellulose-based finishing material shall not be used.

   2.3 A filtering system shall be provided to reduce the amount of overspray carried into the duct manifold.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2.4 Automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided at the junction of each booth exhaust with the manifold, in addition to the protection required by this chapter.

2404.7.6 Termination point. The termination point for exhaust ducts discharging to the atmosphere shall be not less than the following distances:

1. Ducts conveying explosive or flammable vapors, fumes or dusts: 30 feet (9144 mm) from the lot line; 10 feet (3048 mm) from openings into the building; 6 feet (1829 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 30 feet (9144 mm) from combustible walls or openings into the building that are in the direction of the exhaust discharge; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.

2. Other product-conveying outlets: 10 feet (3048 mm) from the lot line; 3 feet (914 mm) from exterior walls and roofs; 10 feet (3048 mm) from openings into the building; 10 feet (3048 mm) above adjoining grade.

2404.7.7 Fan motors and belts. Electric motors driving exhaust fans shall not be placed inside booths or ducts. Fan rotating elements shall be nonferrous or nonsparking or the casing shall consist of, or be lined with, such material. Belts shall not enter the duct or booth unless the belt and pulley within the duct are tightly enclosed.

2404.7.8 Filters. Air intake filters that are part of a wall or ceiling assembly shall be listed as Class I or II in accordance with UL 900. Exhaust filters shall be required.

2404.7.8.1 Supports. Supports and holders for filters shall be constructed of noncombustible materials.

2404.7.8.2 Attachment. Overspray collection filters shall be readily removable and able to be accessed for cleaning or replacement.

2404.7.8.3 Maintaining air velocity. Visible gauges, audible alarms or pressure-activated devices shall be installed to indicate or ensure that the required air velocity is maintained.

2404.7.8.4 Filter rolls. Spray booths equipped with a filter roll that is automatically advanced when the air velocity is reduced to less than 100 feet per minute (0.51 m/s) shall be arranged to shut down the spraying operation if the filter roll fails to advance automatically.

2404.7.8.5 Filter disposal. Discarded filter pads shall be immediately removed to a safe, detached location or placed in a noncombustible container with a tight-fitting lid and disposed of properly.

2404.7.8.6 Spontaneous ignition. Spray booths using dry filters shall not be used for spraying materials that are highly susceptible to spontaneous heating and ignition. Filters shall be changed prior to spraying materials that could react with other materials previously collected. An example of a potentially reactive combination includes lacquer when combined with varnishes, stains or primers.

2404.7.8.7 Waterwash spray booths. Waterwash spray booths shall be of an approved design so as to prevent excessive accumulation of deposits in ducts and residue at duct

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

outlets. Such booths shall be arranged so that air and overspray are drawn through a continuously flowing water curtain before entering an exhaust duct to the building exterior.

2404.8 Interlocks. Interlocks for spray application finishes shall be in accordance with Sections 2404.8.1 through 2404.8.2.

2404.8.1 Automated spray application operations. Where protecting automated spray application operations, automatic fire-extinguishing systems shall be equipped with an approved interlock feature that will, upon discharge of the system, automatically stop the spraying operations and workpiece conveyors into and out of the flammable vapor areas. Where the building is equipped with a fire alarm system, discharge of the automatic fire-extinguishing system shall also activate the building alarm notification appliances.

2404.8.1.1 Alarm station. A manual fire alarm and emergency system shutdown station shall be installed to serve each flammable vapor area. When activated, the station shall accomplish the functions indicated in Section 2404.8.1.

2404.8.1.2 Alarm station location. Not less than one manual fire alarm and emergency system shutdown station shall be provided with ready access for operating personnel. Where access to this station is likely to involve exposure to danger, an additional station shall be located adjacent to an exit from the area.

2404.8.2 Ventilation interlock prohibited. Air makeup and flammable vapor area exhaust systems shall not be interlocked with the fire alarm system and shall remain in operation during a fire alarm condition.

Exception: Where the type of fire-extinguishing system used requires such ventilation be discontinued, air makeup and exhaust systems shall shut down and dampers shall close.

2404.9 Limited spraying spaces. Limited spraying spaces shall comply with Sections 2404.9.1 through 2404.9.4.

2404.9.1 Job size. The aggregate surface area to be sprayed shall not exceed 9 square feet (0.84 m^2).

2404.9.2 Frequency. Spraying operations shall not be of a continuous nature.

2404.9.3 Ventilation. Positive mechanical ventilation providing not fewer than six complete air changes per hour shall be installed. Such system shall meet the requirements of this code for handling flammable vapor areas. Explosion venting is not required.

2404.9.4 Electrical wiring. Electrical wiring within 10 feet (3048 mm) of the floor and 20 feet (6096 mm) horizontally of the limited spraying space shall be designed for Class I, Division 2 locations in accordance with NFPA 70.

Section 2405 Dipping operations

2405.1 General. Dip-tank operations shall comply with the requirements of Section 2403 and Sections 2405.2 through 2405.11.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2405.2 Location of dip-tank operations. Dip-tank operations conducted in buildings used for Group A, I or R occupancies shall be located in a room designed for that purpose, equipped with an approved automatic sprinkler system and separated vertically and horizontally from other areas in accordance with the *building code*.

2405.3 Construction of dip tanks. Dip tanks shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 2405.3.1 through 2405.3.4.3 and NFPA 34. Dip tanks, including drain boards, shall be constructed of noncombustible material and their supports shall be of heavy metal, reinforced concrete or masonry.

2405.3.1 Overflow. Dip tanks greater than 150 gallons (568 L) in capacity or 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) in liquid surface area shall be equipped with a trapped overflow pipe leading to an approved location outside the building. The bottom of the overflow connection shall be not less than 6 inches (152 mm) below the top of the tank.

2405.3.2 Bottom drains. Dip tanks greater than 500 gallons (1893 L) in liquid capacity shall be equipped with bottom drains that are arranged to automatically and manually drain the tank quickly in the event of a fire unless the viscosity of the liquid at normal atmospheric temperature makes this impractical. Access to the manual operation shall be from a safe location. Where gravity flow is not practicable, automatic pumps shall be provided. Such drains shall be trapped and discharged to a closed, vented salvage tank or to an approved outside location.

Exception: Dip tanks containing Class IIIB combustible liquids where the liquids are not heated above room temperature and the process area is protected by automatic sprinklers.

2405.3.3 Dipping liquid temperature control. Protection against the accumulation of vapors, self-ignition and excessively high temperatures shall be provided for dipping liquids that are heated directly or heated by the surfaces of the object being dipped.

2405.3.4 Dip-tank covers. Dip-tank covers allowed by Section 2405.4.1 shall be capable of manual operation and shall be automatic closing by approved automatic-closing devices designed to operate in the event of a fire.

2405.3.4.1 Construction. Covers shall be constructed of noncombustible material or be of a tin-clad type with enclosing metal applied with locked joints.

2405.3.4.2 Supports. Chain or wire rope shall be utilized for cover supports or operating mechanisms.

2405.3.4.3 Closed covers. Covers shall be kept closed when tanks are not in use.

2405.4 Fire protection. Dip-tank operations shall be protected in accordance with Sections 2405.4.1 through 2405.4.2.

2405.4.1 Fixed fire-extinguishing equipment. An approved automatic fire-extinguishing system or dip-tank cover in accordance with Section 2405.3.4 shall be provided for the following dip tanks:

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1. Dip tanks less than 150 gallons (568 L) in capacity or 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) in liquid surface area.

2. Dip tanks containing a liquid with a flash point below 110°F (43°C) used in such manner that the liquid temperature could equal or be greater than its flash point from artificial or natural causes, and having both a capacity of more than 10 gallons (37.9 L) and a liquid surface area of more than 4 square feet (0.37 m^2).

2405.4.1.1 Fire-extinguishing system. An approved automatic fire-extinguishing system shall be provided for dip tanks with a 150-gallon (568 L) or more capacity or 10 square feet (0.93 m^2) or larger in a liquid surface area. Fire-extinguishing system design shall be in accordance with NFPA 34.

2405.4.2 Portable fire extinguishers. Areas in the vicinity of dip tanks shall be provided with portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 and suitable for flammable and combustible liquid fires as specified for extra (high) hazard occupancies.

2405.5 Housekeeping, maintenance and storage of hazardous materials. Housekeeping, maintenance, storage and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 2403.3 and 2403.4.

2405.6 Sources of ignition. Control of sources of ignition shall be in accordance with Section 2403.2.

2405.7 Ventilation of flammable vapor areas. Flammable vapor areas shall be provided with mechanical ventilation adequate to prevent the dangerous accumulation of vapors. Required ventilation systems shall be arranged such that the failure of any ventilating fan shall automatically stop the dipping conveyor system.

2405.8 Conveyor interlock. Dip tanks utilizing a conveyor system shall be arranged such that in the event of a fire, the conveyor system shall automatically cease motion and the required tank bottom drains shall open.

2405.9 Hardening and tempering tanks. Hardening and tempering tanks shall comply with Sections 2405.3 through 2405.3.3, 2405.9.4 and 2405.8, but shall be exempt from other provisions of Section 2405.

2405.9.1 Location. Tanks shall be located as far as practical from furnaces and shall not be located on or near combustible floors.

2405.9.2 Hoods. Tanks shall be provided with a noncombustible hood and vent or other approved venting means, terminating outside of the structure to serve as a vent in case of a fire. Such vent ducts shall be treated as flues and proper clearances shall be maintained from combustible materials.

2405.9.3 Alarms. Tanks shall be equipped with a high-temperature limit switch arranged to sound an alarm when the temperature of the quenching medium reaches 50°F (10°C) below the flash point.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2405.9.4 Fire protection. Hardening and tempering tanks greater than 500 gallons (1893 L) in capacity or 25 square feet (2.3 m^2) in liquid surface area shall be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system complying with Chapter 9.

2405.9.5 Use of air pressure. Air under pressure shall not be used to fill or agitate oil in tanks.

2405.10 Flow-coating operations. Flow-coating operations shall comply with the requirements for dip tanks. The area of the sump and any areas on which paint flows shall be considered to be the area of a dip tank.

2405.10.1 Paint supply. Paint shall be supplied by a gravity tank not exceeding 10 gallons (38 L) in capacity or by direct low-pressure pumps arranged to shut down automatically in case of a fire by means of approved heat-actuated devices.

2405.11 Roll-coating operations. Roll-coating operations shall comply with Section 2405.10. In roll-coating operations utilizing flammable or combustible liquids, sparks from static electricity shall be prevented by electrically bonding and grounding all metallic rotating and other parts of machinery and equipment and by the installation of static collectors, or by maintaining a conductive atmosphere such as a high relative humidity.

Section 2406 Powder coating

2406.1 General. Operations using finely ground particles of protective finishing material applied in dry powder form by a fluidized bed, an electrostatic fluidized bed, powder spray guns or electrostatic powder spray guns shall comply with Sections 2406.2 through 2406.7. In addition, Section 2407 shall apply to fixed electrostatic equipment used in powder coating operations.

2406.2 Location. Powder coating operations shall be conducted in enclosed powder coating rooms, enclosed powder coating facilities that are ventilated or ventilated spray booths.

2406.3 Construction of powder coating rooms and booths. Powder coating rooms shall be constructed of noncombustible materials. Spray booths shall be constructed in accordance with Section 2404.3.3.

Exception: Listed spray-booth assemblies that are constructed of other materials shall be allowed.

2406.4 Fire protection. Areas used for powder coating shall be protected by an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system complying with Chapter 9.

2406.4.1 Additional protection for fixed systems. Automated powder application equipment shall be protected by the installation of an approved, supervised flame detection apparatus that shall react to the presence of flame within 0.5 second and shall accomplish all of the following:

1. Shutting down of energy supplies (electrical and compressed air) to conveyor, ventilation, application, transfer and powder collection equipment.

2. Closing of segregation dampers in associated ductwork to interrupt airflow from application equipment to powder collectors.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

3. Activation of an alarm that is audible throughout the powder coating room or booth.

2406.4.2 Fire extinguishers. Portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 shall be provided for areas used for powder coating in accordance with the requirements for an extra-hazard occupancy.

2406.5 Operation and maintenance. Powder coating areas shall be kept free from the accumulation of powder coating dusts, including horizontal surfaces such as ledges, beams, pipes, hoods, booths and floors.

2406.5.1 Cleaning. Surfaces shall be cleaned in such a manner so as to avoid scattering dusts to other places or creating dust clouds. Vacuum sweeping equipment shall be of a type approved for use in hazardous locations.

2406.6 Sources of ignition. Control of sources of ignition shall be in accordance with Section 2403.2 and Sections 2406.6.1 through 2406.6.4.

2406.6.1 Drying, curing and fusion equipment. Drying, curing and fusion equipment shall comply with Chapter 30.

2406.6.2 Spark-producing metals. Iron or spark-producing metals shall be prevented from being introduced into the powders being applied by magnetic separators, filter-type separators or by other approved means.

2406.6.3 Preheated parts. When parts are heated prior to coating, the temperature of the parts shall not exceed the ignition temperature of the powder to be used.

2406.6.4 Grounding and bonding. Precautions shall be taken to minimize the possibility of ignition by static electrical sparks through static bonding and grounding, where possible, of powder transport, application and recovery equipment.

2406.7 Ventilation. Exhaust ventilation shall be sufficient to maintain the atmosphere below one-half the minimum explosive concentration for the material being applied. Nondeposited, air-suspended powders shall be removed through exhaust ducts to the powder recovery system.

Section 2407 Electrostatic apparatus

2407.1 General. Electrostatic apparatus and devices used in connection with paint-spraying and paint-detearing operations shall be of an approved type.

2407.2 Location and clear space. A space of not less than twice the sparking distance shall be maintained between goods being painted or deteared and electrodes, electrostatic atomizing heads or conductors. A sign stating the sparking distance shall be conspicuously posted near the assembly.

Exception: Portable electrostatic paint-spraying apparatus listed for use in Class I, Division 1, locations.

2407.3 Construction of equipment. Electrodes and electrostatic atomizing heads shall be of approved construction, rigidly supported in permanent locations and effectively insulated from ground. Insulators shall be nonporous and noncombustible.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Exception: Portable electrostatic paint-spraying apparatus listed for use in Class I, Division 1, locations.

2407.3.1 Barriers. Booths, fencing, railings or guards shall be placed about the equipment such that either by their location or character, or both, isolation of the process is maintained from plant storage and personnel. Railings, fencing and guards shall be of conductive material, adequately grounded, and not less than 5 feet (1524 mm) from processing equipment.

Exception: Portable electrostatic paint-spraying apparatus listed for use in Class I, Division 1, locations.

2407.4 Fire protection. Areas used for electrostatic spray finishing with fixed equipment shall be protected with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing system complying with Chapter 9 and Section 2407.4.1.

2407.4.1 Protection for automated liquid electrostatic spray application equipment. Automated liquid electrostatic spray application equipment shall be protected by the installation of an approved, supervised flame detection apparatus that shall, in the event of ignition, react to the presence of flame within 0.5 second and shall accomplish all of the following:

1. Activation of a local alarm in the vicinity of the spraying operation and activation of the building alarm system, if such a system is provided.
2. Shutting down of the coating material delivery system.
3. Termination of all spray application operations.
4. Stopping of conveyors into and out of the flammable vapor areas.
5. Disconnection of power to the high-voltage elements in the flammable vapor areas and disconnection of power to the system.

2407.5 Housekeeping, maintenance and storage of hazardous materials. Housekeeping, maintenance, storage and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 2403.3, 2403.4 and 2407.5.1 and 2407.5.2.

2407.5.1 Maintenance. Insulators shall be kept clean and dry. Drip plates and screens subject to paint deposits shall be removable and taken to a safe place for cleaning. Grounds and bonding means for the paint-spraying apparatus and all associated equipment shall be periodically cleaned and maintained free of overspray.

2407.5.2 Signs. Signs shall be posted to provide the following information:

1. Designate the process zone as dangerous with respect to fire and accident.
2. Identify the grounding requirements for all electrically conductive objects in the flammable vapor area, including persons.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

3. Restrict access to qualified personnel only.

2407.6 Sources of ignition. Transformers, power packs, control apparatus and all other electrical portions of the equipment, except high-voltage grids and electrostatic atomizing heads and connections, shall be located outside of the flammable vapor areas or shall comply with Section 2403.2.

2407.7 Ventilation. The flammable vapor area shall be ventilated in accordance with Section 2404.7.

2407.8 Emergency shutdown. Electrostatic apparatus shall be equipped with automatic controls operating without time delay to disconnect the power supply to the high-voltage transformer and signal the operator under any of the following conditions:

1. Stoppage of ventilating fans or failure of ventilating equipment from any cause.
2. Stoppage of the conveyor carrying articles past the high-voltage grid.
3. Occurrence of a ground or an imminent ground at any point of the high-voltage system.
4. Reduction of clearance below that required in Section 2407.2.

2407.9 Ventilation interlock. Hand electrostatic equipment shall be interlocked with the ventilation system for the spraying area so that the equipment cannot be operated unless the ventilating system is in operation.

Section 2408 Organic peroxides and dual-component coatings

2408.1 General. Spraying operations involving the use of organic peroxides and other dual-component coatings shall be in accordance with the requirements of Section 2403 and Sections 2408.2 through 2408.5.

2408.2 Use of organic peroxide coatings. Spraying operations involving the use of organic peroxides and other dual-component coatings shall be conducted in approved sprinklered spray booths complying with Section 2404.3.3.

2408.3 Equipment. Spray guns and related handling equipment used with organic peroxides shall be of a type manufactured for such use.

2408.3.1 Pressure tanks. Separate pressure vessels and inserts specifically for the application shall be used for the resin and for the organic peroxide and shall not be interchanged. Organic peroxide pressure tank inserts shall be constructed of stainless steel or polyethylene.

2408.4 Housekeeping, maintenance, storage and use of hazardous materials. Housekeeping, maintenance, storage and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 2403.3 and 2403.4 and Sections 2408.4.1 through 2408.4.7.

2408.4.1 Contamination prevention. Organic peroxide initiators shall not be contaminated with foreign substances.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2408.4.2 Spilled material. Spilled organic peroxides shall be promptly removed and any residue thereof promptly eliminated. Spilled material absorbed by using a noncombustible absorbent shall be promptly disposed of in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation.

2408.4.3 Residue control. Materials shall not be contaminated by dusts and overspray residues resulting from the sanding or spraying of finishing materials containing organic peroxides.

2408.4.4 Handling. Handling of organic peroxides shall be conducted in a manner that avoids shock and friction that produces decomposition and violent reaction hazards.

2408.4.5 Mixing. Organic peroxides shall not be mixed directly with accelerators or promoters.

2408.4.6 Personnel qualifications. Personnel working with organic peroxides and dual-component coatings shall be specifically trained to work with these materials.

2408.4.7 Storage. The storage of organic peroxides shall comply with Chapter 62.

2408.5 Sources of ignition. Only nonsparking tools shall be used in areas where organic peroxides are stored, mixed or applied.

Section 2409 Indoor manufacturing of reinforced plastics

2409.1 General. Indoor manufacturing processes involving spray or hand application of reinforced plastics and using more than 5 gallons (19 L) of resin in a 24-hour period shall be in accordance with Sections 2409.2 through 2409.6.1.

2409.2 Resin application equipment. Equipment used for spray application of resin shall be installed and used in accordance with Section 2408 and Sections 2409.3 through 2409.6.1.

2409.3 Fire protection. Resin application areas shall be protected by an automatic sprinkler system. The sprinkler system design shall be not less than that required for Ordinary Hazard, Group 2, with a minimum design area of 3,000 square feet (279 m^2). Where the materials or storage arrangements are required by other regulations to be provided with a higher level of sprinkler system protection, the higher level of sprinkler system protection shall be provided.

2409.4 Housekeeping, maintenance, storage and use of hazardous materials. Housekeeping, maintenance, storage and use of hazardous materials shall be in accordance with Sections 2403.3 and 2403.4 and 2409.4.1 through 2409.4.3.

2409.4.1 Handling of excess catalyzed resin. A noncombustible, open-top container shall be provided for disposal of excess catalyzed resin. Excess catalyzed resin shall be drained into the container while still in the liquid state. Enough water shall be provided in the container to maintain a minimum 2-inch (51 mm) water layer over the contained resin.

2409.4.2 Control of overchop. In areas where chopper guns are used, exposed wall and floor surfaces shall be covered with paper, polyethylene film or other approved material to allow for removal of overchop. Overchop shall be allowed to cure for not less than 4 hours prior to removal.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2409.4.2.1 Disposal. Following removal, used wall and floor covering materials required by Section 2409.4.2 shall be placed in a noncombustible container and removed from the facility.

2409.4.3 Storage and use of hazardous materials. Storage and use of organic peroxides shall be in accordance with Section 2408 and Chapter 62. Storage and use of flammable and combustible liquids shall be in accordance with Chapter 57. Storage and use of unstable (reactive) materials shall be in accordance with Chapter 66.

2409.5 Sources of ignition in resin application areas. Sources of ignition in resin application areas shall comply with Section 2403.2.

2409.6 Ventilation. Mechanical ventilation shall be provided throughout resin application areas in accordance with Section 2404.7. The ventilation rate shall be adequate to maintain the concentration of flammable vapors in the resin application area at or below 25 percent of the LFL.

Exception: Mechanical ventilation is not required for buildings that have 75 percent of the perimeter unenclosed.

2409.6.1 Local ventilation. Local ventilation shall be provided inside of workpieces where personnel will be under or inside of the workpiece.

Section 2410 Floor surfacing and finishing operations

2410.1 Scope. Floor surfacing and finishing operations exceeding 350 square feet (33 m^2) and using Class I or II liquids shall comply with Sections 2410.2 through 2410.5.

2410.2 Mechanical system operation. Heating, ventilation and air-conditioning systems shall not be operated during resurfacing or refinishing operations or within 4 hours of the application of flammable or combustible liquids.

2410.3 Business operation. Floor surfacing and finishing operations shall not be conducted while an establishment is open to the public.

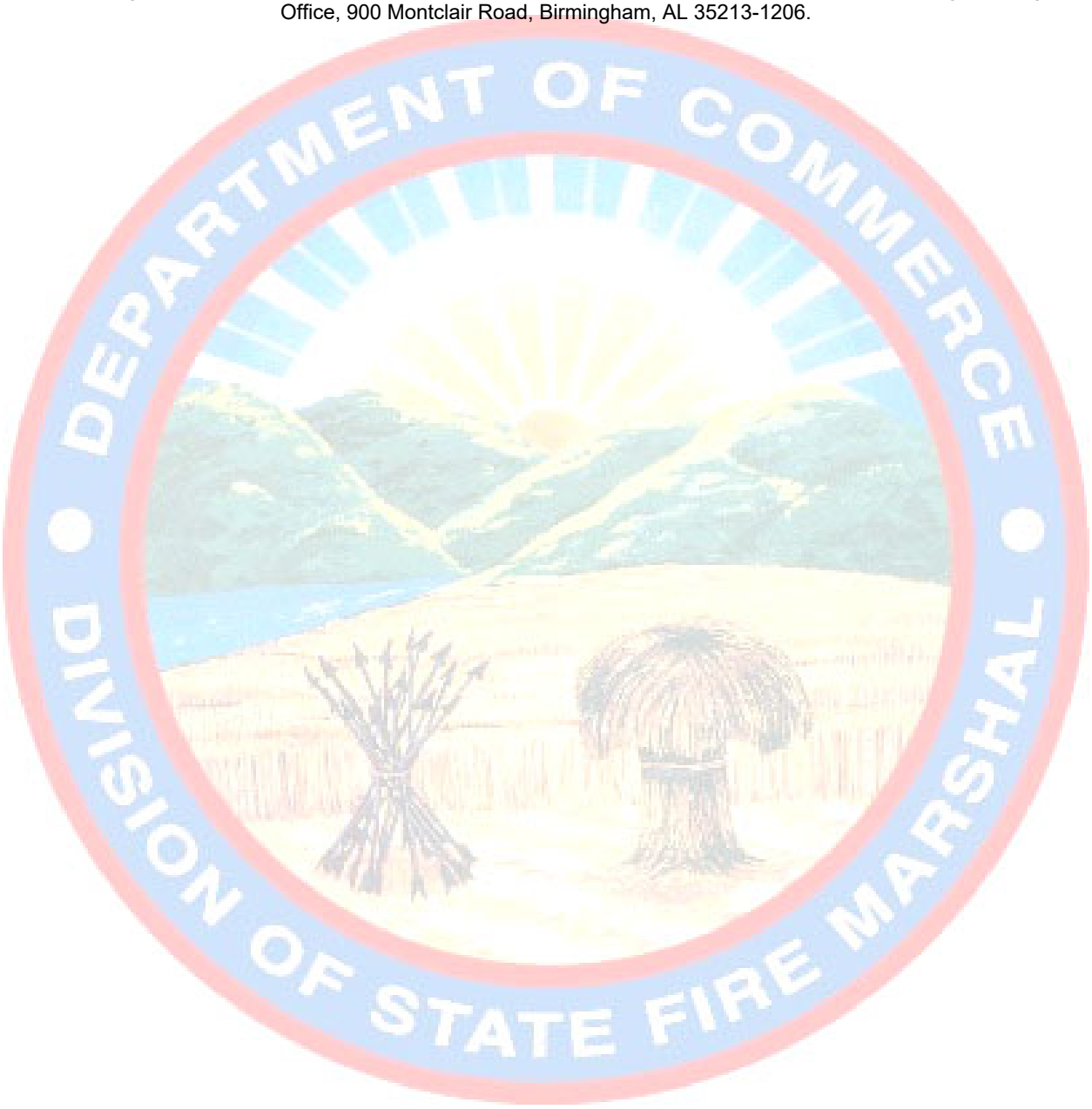
2410.4 Ignition sources. The power shall be shut down to all electrical sources of ignition within the flammable vapor area, unless those devices are classified for use in Class I, Division 1 hazardous locations.

2410.5 Ventilation. To prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors, mechanical ventilation at a minimum rate of 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot [0.00508 $m^3/(s \cdot m^2)$] of area being finished shall be provided. Such exhaust shall be by approved temporary or portable means. Vapors shall be exhausted to the exterior of the building.

Copyright Claim Information

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.



1301:7-7-25 Fruit and crop ripening.

Section 2501 General

2501.1 Scope. Ripening processes where ethylene gas is introduced into a room to promote the ripening of fruits, vegetables and other crops shall comply with this chapter.

Exception: Mixtures of ethylene and one or more inert gases in concentrations that prevent the gas from reaching greater than 25 percent of the lower explosive limit (LEL) when released to the atmosphere.

2501.2 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

2501.3 Ethylene generators. Approved ethylene generators shall be operated and maintained in accordance with Section 2506.

Section 2502 Definitions

2502.1 Terms defined in Chapter 2. Words and terms used in this chapter and defined in Chapter 2 shall have the meanings ascribed to them as defined therein.

Section 2503 Ethylene gas

2503.1 Location. Ethylene gas shall be discharged only into approved rooms or enclosures designed and constructed for this purpose.

2503.2 Dispensing. Valves controlling discharge of ethylene shall provide positive and fail-closed control of flow and shall be set to limit the concentration of gas in air below 1,000 parts per million (ppm).

Section 2504 Sources of ignition

2504.1 Ignition prevention. Sources of ignition shall be controlled or protected in accordance with this section and Chapter 3.

2504.2 Electrical wiring and equipment. Electrical wiring and equipment, including luminaires, shall be approved for use in Class I, Division 2, Group C hazardous (classified) locations.

2504.3 Static electricity. Containers, piping and equipment used to dispense ethylene shall be bonded and grounded to prevent the discharge of static sparks or arcs.

2504.4 Lighting. Lighting shall be by approved electric lamps or luminaires only.

2504.5 Heating. Heating shall be by indirect means utilizing low-pressure steam, hot water or warm air.

Exception: Electric or fuel-fired heaters approved for use in hazardous (classified) locations and that are installed and operated in accordance with the applicable provisions of NFPA 70, the *mechanical code* or the International Fuel Gas Code.

Section 2505 Combustible waste

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2505.1 Housekeeping. Empty boxes, cartons, pallets and other combustible waste shall be removed from ripening rooms or enclosures and disposed of at regular intervals in accordance with Chapter 3.

Section 2506 Ethylene generators

2506.1 Ethylene generators. Ethylene generators shall be listed and labeled by an approved testing laboratory, approved by the fire code official and used only in approved rooms in accordance with the ethylene generator manufacturer's instructions. The listing evaluation shall include documentation that the concentration of ethylene gas does not exceed 25 percent of the lower explosive limit (LEL).

2506.2 Ethylene generator rooms. Ethylene generators shall be used in rooms having a volume of not less than 1,000 cubic feet (28 m^3). Rooms shall have air circulation to ensure even distribution of ethylene gas and shall be free from sparks, open flames or other ignition sources.

Section 2507 Warning signs

2507.1 Where required. Approved warning signs indicating the danger involved and necessary precautions shall be posted on all doors and entrances to the premises.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

1301:7-7-26 Fumigation and insecticidal fogging.

Section 2601 General

2601.1 Scope. Fumigation and insecticidal fogging operations within buildings, structures and spaces shall comply with this chapter.

2601.2 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

Section 2602 Definitions

2602.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2.

Fumigant.

Fumigation.

Insecticidal fogging.

Section 2603 Fire safety requirements

2603.1 General. Buildings, structures and spaces in which fumigation and insecticidal fogging operations are conducted shall comply with the fire protection and safety requirements of Sections 2603.2 through 2603.7.

2603.2 Sources of ignition. Fires, open flames and similar sources of ignition shall be eliminated from the space under fumigation or insecticidal fogging. Heating, where needed, shall be of an approved type.

2603.2.1 Electricity. Electricity in any part of the building, structure or space where operation of switches or electrical devices, equipment or systems could serve as a source of ignition shall be shut off.

Exception: Circulating fans that have been specifically designed for utilization in hazardous atmospheres and installed in accordance with NFPA 70.

2603.2.2 Electronic devices. Electronic devices, including portable equipment and cellular phones, shall be shut off. Telephone lines shall be disconnected from telephones.

2603.2.3 Duration. Sources of ignition shall be shut off during the fumigation activity and remain shut off until the ventilation required in Section 2603.6 is completed.

2603.3 Notification. The fire code official and fire chief shall be notified in writing not less than 48 hours before the building, structure or space is to be closed in connection with the utilization of any toxic or flammable fumigant. Notification shall give the location of the enclosed space to be fumigated or fogged, the occupancy, the fumigants or insecticides to be utilized, the person or persons responsible for the operation, and the date and time at which the operation will begin. Written notice of any fumigation or insecticidal fogging operation shall be given to all affected occupants of the building, structure or space in which such operations are to be conducted with sufficient advance notice to allow the occupants to evacuate the building, structure or space. Such

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

notice shall inform the occupants as to the purposes, anticipated duration and hazards associated with the fumigation or insecticidal fogging operation.

2603.3.1 Warning signs. Approved warning signs indicating the danger, type of chemical involved and necessary precautions shall be posted on all doors and entrances to the affected building, structure or space and on all gangplanks and ladders from the deck, pier or land to a ship. Such notices shall be printed in red ink on a white background. Letters in the headlines shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in height and shall state the date and time of the operation, the name and address of the person, the name of the operator in charge, and a warning stating that the affected building, structure or space shall be vacated not less than 1 hour before the operation begins and shall not be reentered until the danger signs have been removed by the proper authorities.

2603.3.2 Breathing apparatus. Persons engaged in the business of fumigation or insecticidal fogging shall maintain and have available approved protective breathing apparatus.

2603.3.3 Watch personnel. During the period fumigation is in progress, except where fumigation is conducted in a gastight vault or tank, a responsible watchperson shall remain on duty at the entrance or entrances to the enclosed fumigated space until after the fumigation is completed and the building, structure or space is properly ventilated and safe for occupancy. Sufficient watchers shall be provided to prevent persons from entering the enclosed space under fumigation without being observed.

2603.3.4 Evacuation during fumigation. Occupants of the building, structure or space to be fumigated, except the personnel conducting the fumigation, shall be evacuated from such building, structure or space prior to commencing fumigation operations.

2603.3.5 Evacuation during insecticidal fogging operations. Occupants in the building, structure or space to be fogged, except the personnel conducting the insecticidal fogging operations, shall be evacuated from such building, structure or space prior to commencing fogging operations.

2603.4 Insecticidal fogging liquids. Insecticidal fogging liquids with a flash point below 100°F (38°C) shall not be utilized.

2603.5 Sealing of buildings, structures and spaces. Paper and other similar materials that do not meet the flame propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 shall not be used to wrap or cover a building, structure or space in excess of that required for the sealing of cracks, casements and similar openings.

2603.5.1 Maintenance of openings. All openings to the building, structure or space to be fumigated or fogged shall be kept securely closed during such operation.

2603.6 Venting and cleanup. At the end of the exposure period, fumigators shall safely and properly ventilate the premises and contents; properly dispose of fumigant containers, residues, debris and other materials used for such fumigation; and clear obstructions from gas-fired appliance vents.

2603.7 Flammable fumigants restricted. The use of carbon disulfide and hydrogen cyanide shall be restricted to agricultural fumigation.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

1301:7-7-27 Semiconductor fabrication facilities.

Section 2701 General

2701.1 Scope. Semiconductor fabrication facilities and comparable research and development areas classified as Group H-5 shall comply with this chapter and the *building code*. The use, storage and handling of hazardous materials in Group H-5 shall comply with this chapter, other applicable provisions of this code and the *building code*.

2701.2 Application. The requirements set forth in this chapter are requirements specific only to Group H-5 and shall be applied as exceptions or additions to applicable requirements set forth elsewhere in this code.

2701.3 Multiple hazards. Where a material poses multiple hazards, all hazards shall be addressed in accordance with Section 5001.1.

2701.4 Existing buildings and existing fabrication areas. Existing buildings and existing fabrication areas shall comply with this chapter, except that transportation and handling of HPM in corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps shall be allowed where in compliance with Section 2705.3.2 and the *building code*.

2701.5 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

Section 2702 Definitions

2702.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2.

Emergency control station.

Fabrication area.

Gas detection system.

Hazardous production material (HPM).

HPM.

HPM room.

Pass-through.

Semiconductor fabrication facility.

Service corridor.

Tool.

Workstation.

Section 2703 General safety provisions

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2703.1 Emergency control station. An emergency control station shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2703.1.1 through 2703.1.3.

2703.1.1 Location. The emergency control station shall be located on the premises at an approved location outside the fabrication area.

2703.1.2 Staffing. Trained personnel shall continuously staff the emergency control station.

2703.1.3 Signals. The emergency control station shall receive signals from emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems. Such emergency equipment and alarm and detection systems shall include, but not be limited to, the following where such equipment or systems are required to be provided either in this chapter or elsewhere in this code:

1. Automatic sprinkler system alarm and monitoring systems.
2. Manual fire alarm systems.
3. Emergency alarm systems.
4. (iv) Gas detection systems.
5. Smoke detection systems.
6. Emergency power systems.
7. Automatic detection and alarm systems for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids required by Section 2705.2.3.4.
8. Exhaust ventilation flow alarm devices for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids and cabinet exhaust ventilation systems required by Section 2705.2.3.4.

2703.2 Systems, equipment and processes. Systems, equipment and processes shall be in accordance with Sections 2703.2.1 through 2703.2.3.2.

2703.2.1 Application. Systems, equipment and processes shall include, but not be limited to, containers, cylinders, tanks, piping, tubing, valves and fittings.

2703.2.2 General requirements. In addition to the requirements in Section 2703.2 systems, equipment and processes shall comply with Section 5003.2, other applicable provisions of this code, the *building code* and the *mechanical code*.

2703.2.3 Additional requirements for HPM supply piping. In addition to the requirements in Section 2703.2, HPM supply piping and tubing for HPM gases and liquids shall comply with this section.

2703.2.3.1 General requirements. The requirements set forth in Section 5003.2.2.2 shall apply to supply piping and tubing for HPM gases and liquids.

2703.2.3.2 Health-hazard ranking 3 or 4 HPM. Supply piping and tubing for HPM gases and liquids having a health-hazard ranking of 3 or 4 shall be welded throughout, except

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

for connections located within a ventilation enclosure if the material is a gas, or an approved method of drainage or containment provided for connections if the material is a liquid.

2703.3 Construction requirements. Construction of semiconductor fabrication facilities shall be in accordance with Sections 2703.3.1 through 2703.3.9.

2703.3.1 Fabrication areas. Construction and location of fabrication areas shall comply with the *building code*.

2703.3.2 Pass-throughs in exit access corridors. Pass-throughs in exit access corridors shall be constructed in accordance with the *building code*.

2703.3.3 Liquid storage rooms. Liquid storage rooms shall comply with Chapter 57 and the *building code*.

2703.3.4 HPM rooms. HPM rooms shall comply with the *building code*.

2703.3.5 Gas cabinets. Gas cabinets shall comply with Section 5003.8.6.

2703.3.6 Exhausted enclosures. Exhausted enclosures shall comply with Section 5003.8.5.

2703.3.7 Gas rooms. Gas rooms shall comply with Section 5003.8.4.

2703.3.8 Service corridors. Service corridors shall comply with Section 2705.3 and the *building code*.

2703.3.9 Cabinets containing pyrophoric liquids or water-reactive Class 3 liquids. Cabinets in fabrication areas containing pyrophoric liquids or Class 3 water-reactive liquids in containers or in amounts greater than ½ gallon (2 L) shall comply with Section 2705.2.3.4.

2703.4 Emergency plan. An emergency plan shall be established as set forth in Section 403.6.1.

2703.5 Maintenance of equipment, machinery and processes. Maintenance of equipment, machinery and processes shall comply with Section 5003.2.6.

2703.6 Security of areas. Areas shall be secured in accordance with Section 5003.9.2.

2703.7 Electrical wiring and equipment. Electrical wiring and equipment in HPM facilities shall comply with Sections 2703.7.1 through 2703.7.3.

2703.7.1 Fabrication areas. Electrical wiring and equipment in fabrication areas shall comply with NFPA 70.

2703.7.2 Workstations. Electrical equipment and devices within 5 feet (1524 mm) of workstations in which flammable or pyrophoric gases or flammable liquids are used shall comply with NFPA 70 for Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations. Workstations shall not be energized without adequate exhaust ventilation in accordance with Section 2703.14.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Exception: Class I, Division 2 hazardous electrical equipment is not required where the air removal from the workstation or dilution will prevent the accumulation of flammable vapors and fumes on a continuous basis.

2703.7.3 Hazardous production material (HPM) rooms, gas rooms and liquid storage rooms. Electrical wiring and equipment in HPM rooms, gas rooms and liquid storage rooms shall comply with NFPA 70.

2703.8 Corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps. Hazardous materials shall not be used or stored in corridors or enclosures for stairways and ramps.

2703.9 Service corridors. Hazardous materials shall not be used in an open-system use condition in service corridors.

2703.10 Automatic sprinkler system. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2703.10.1 through 2703.10.5 and Chapter 9.

2703.10.1 Workstations and tools. The design of the sprinkler system in the area shall take into consideration the spray pattern and the effect on the equipment.

2703.10.1.1 Combustible workstations. A sprinkler head shall be installed within each branch exhaust connection or individual plenums of workstations of combustible construction. The sprinkler head in the exhaust connection or plenum shall be located not more than 2 feet (610 mm) from the point of the duct connection or the connection to the plenum. Where necessary to prevent corrosion, the sprinkler head and connecting piping in the duct shall be coated with approved or listed corrosion-resistant materials. Access to the sprinkler head shall be provided for periodic inspection.

Exceptions:

1. Approved alternative automatic fire-extinguishing systems are allowed. Activation of such systems shall deactivate the related processing equipment.
2. Process equipment that operates at temperatures exceeding 932°F (500°C) and is provided with automatic shutdown capabilities for hazardous materials.
3. Exhaust ducts 10 inches (254 mm) or less in diameter from flammable gas storage cabinets that are part of a workstation.
4. Ducts listed or approved for use without internal automatic sprinkler protection.

2703.10.1.2 Combustible tools. Where the horizontal surface of a combustible tool is obstructed from ceiling sprinkler discharge, automatic sprinkler protection that covers the horizontal surface of the tool shall be provided.

Exceptions:

1. An automatic gaseous fire-extinguishing local surface application system shall be allowed as an alternative to sprinklers. Gaseous-extinguishing systems shall be actuated by infrared (IR) or ultraviolet/infrared (UV/IR) optical detectors.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2. Tools constructed of materials that are listed as Class 1 or Class 2 in accordance with UL 2360 or approved for use without internal fire-extinguishing system protection.

2703.10.2 Gas cabinets and exhausted enclosures. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in gas cabinets and exhausted enclosures containing HPM compressed gases.

Exception: Gas cabinets located in an HPM room other than those cabinets containing pyrophoric gases.

2703.10.3 Pass-throughs in existing exit access corridors. Pass-throughs in existing exit access corridors shall be protected by an approved automatic sprinkler system.

2703.10.4 Exhaust ducts for HPM. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in exhaust ducts conveying gases, vapors, fumes, mists or dusts generated from HPM in accordance with this section and the *mechanical code*.

2703.10.4.1 Metallic and noncombustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in metallic and noncombustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts where all of the following conditions apply:

1. Where the largest cross-sectional diameter is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).

2. The ducts are within the building.

3. The ducts are conveying flammable gases, vapors or fumes.

2703.10.4.2 Combustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts. An approved automatic sprinkler system shall be provided in combustible nonmetallic exhaust ducts where the largest cross-sectional diameter of the duct is equal to or greater than 10 inches (254 mm).

Exceptions:

1. Ducts listed or approved for applications without automatic sprinkler system protection.

2. Ducts not more than 12 feet (3658 mm) in length installed below ceiling level.

2703.10.4.3 Exhaust connections and plenums of combustible workstations. Automatic fire-extinguishing system protection for exhaust connections and plenums of combustible workstations shall comply with Section 2703.10.1.1.

2703.10.4.4 Exhaust duct sprinkler system requirements. Automatic sprinklers installed in exhaust duct systems shall be hydraulically designed to provide 0.5 gallon per minute (gpm) (1.9 L/min) over an area derived by multiplying the distance between the sprinklers in a horizontal duct by the width of the duct. Minimum discharge shall be 20 gpm (76 L/min) per sprinkler from the five hydraulically most remote sprinklers.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2703.10.4.4.1 Sprinkler head locations. Automatic sprinklers shall be installed at 12-foot (3658 mm) intervals in horizontal ducts and at changes in direction. In vertical runs, automatic sprinklers shall be installed at the top and at alternate floor levels.

2703.10.4.4.2 Control valve. A separate indicating control valve shall be provided for sprinklers installed in exhaust ducts.

2703.10.4.4.3 Drainage. Drainage shall be provided to remove sprinkler water discharged in exhaust ducts.

2703.10.4.4.4 Corrosive atmospheres. Where corrosive atmospheres exist, exhaust duct sprinklers and pipe fittings shall be manufactured of corrosion-resistant materials or coated with approved materials.

2703.10.4.4.5 Maintenance and inspection. Access to sprinklers in exhaust ducts shall be provided for periodic inspection and maintenance.

2703.10.5 Sprinkler alarms and supervision. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be electrically supervised and provided with alarms in accordance with Chapter 9. Automatic sprinkler system alarm and supervisory signals shall be transmitted to the emergency control station.

2703.11 Manual fire alarm system. A manual fire alarm system shall be installed throughout buildings containing a Group H-5 occupancy. Activation of the alarm system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station. Manual fire alarm systems shall be designed and installed in accordance with Section 907.

2703.12 Emergency alarm system. Emergency alarm systems shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2703.12.1 through 2703.12.3, Section 5004.9 and Section 5005.4.4. The maximum allowable quantity per control area provisions of Section 5004.1 shall not apply to emergency alarm systems required for HPM.

2703.12.1 Where required. Emergency alarm systems shall be provided in the areas indicated in Sections 2703.12.1.1 through 2703.12.1.3.

2703.12.1.1 Service corridors. An approved emergency alarm system shall be provided in service corridors, with not less than one alarm device in the service corridor.

2703.12.1.2 Corridors and interior exit stairways and ramps. Emergency alarms for corridors, interior exit stairways and ramps and exit passageways shall comply with Section 5005.4.4.

2703.12.1.3 Liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms. Emergency alarms for liquid storage rooms, HPM rooms and gas rooms shall comply with Section 5004.9.

2703.12.2 Alarm-initiating devices. An approved emergency telephone system, local alarm manual pull stations, or other approved alarm-initiating devices are allowed to be used as emergency alarm-initiating devices.

2703.12.3 Alarm signals. Activation of the emergency alarm system shall sound a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2703.13 Gas detection systems. A gas detection system complying with Section 916 shall be provided for HPM gases where the physiological warning threshold level of the gas is at a higher level than the accepted permissible exposure limit (PEL) for the gas and for flammable gases in accordance with Sections 2703.13.1 through 2703.13.2.2.

2703.13.1 Where required. A gas detection system shall be provided in the areas identified in Sections 2703.13.1.1 through 2703.13.1.4.

2703.13.1.1 Fabrication areas. A gas detection system shall be provided in fabrication areas where HPM gas is used in the fabrication area.

2703.13.1.2 HPM rooms. A gas detection system shall be provided in HPM rooms where HPM gas is used in the room.

2703.13.1.3 Gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures and gas rooms. A gas detection system shall be provided in gas cabinets and exhausted enclosures for HPM gas. A gas detection system shall be provided in gas rooms where HPM gases are not located in gas cabinets or exhausted enclosures.

2703.13.1.4 Corridors. Where HPM gases are transported in piping placed within the space defined by the walls of a corridor and the floor or roof above the corridor, a gas detection system shall be provided where piping is located and in the corridor.

Exception: A gas detection system is not required for occasional transverse crossings of the corridors by supply piping that is enclosed in a ferrous pipe or tube for the width of the corridor.

2703.13.2 Gas detection system operation. The gas detection system shall be capable of monitoring the room, area or equipment in which the HPM gas is located at or below all the following gas concentrations:

1. Immediately dangerous to life and health (IDLH) values where the monitoring point is within an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.

2. Permissible exposure limit (PEL) levels where the monitoring point is in an area outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.

3. For flammable gases, the monitoring detection threshold level shall be vapor concentrations in excess of 25 percent of the lower flammable limit (LFL) where the monitoring is within or outside an exhausted enclosure, ventilated enclosure or gas cabinet.

4. Except as noted in this section, monitoring for highly toxic and toxic gases shall also comply with Chapter 60.

2703.13.2.1 Alarms. The gas detection system shall initiate a local alarm and transmit a signal to the emergency control station when a short-term hazard condition is detected. The alarm shall be both visible and audible and shall provide warning both inside and outside the area where the gas is detected. The audible alarm shall be distinct from all other alarms.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2703.13.2.2 Shut off of gas supply. The gas detection system shall automatically close the shutoff valve at the source on gas supply piping and tubing related to the system being monitored for which gas is detected when a short-term hazard condition is detected. Automatic closure of shutoff valves shall comply with the following:

1. Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valve in the gas cabinet or exhausted enclosure for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

2. Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a room and compressed gas containers are not in gas cabinets or exhausted enclosure, the shutoff valves on all gas lines for the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

3. Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is within a piping distribution manifold enclosure, the shutoff valve supplying the manifold for the compressed gas container of the specific gas detected shall automatically close.

   Exception: Where the gas-detection sampling point initiating the gas detection system alarm is at the use location or within a gas valve enclosure of a branch line downstream of a piping distribution manifold, the shutoff valve for the branch line located in the piping distribution manifold enclosure shall automatically close.

2703.14 Exhaust ventilation systems for HPM. Exhaust ventilation systems and materials for exhaust ducts utilized for the exhaust of HPM shall comply with Sections 2703.14.1 through 2703.14.3, other applicable provisions of this code, the *building code* and the *mechanical code*.

2703.14.1 Where required. Exhaust ventilation systems shall be provided in the following locations in accordance with the requirements of this section and the *building code*:

1. Fabrication areas: Exhaust ventilation for fabrication areas shall comply with the *building code*. The fire code official is authorized to require additional manual control switches.

2. Workstations: A ventilation system shall be provided to capture and exhaust gases, fumes and vapors at workstations.

3. Liquid storage rooms: Exhaust ventilation for liquid storage rooms shall comply with Section 5004.3.1 and the *building code*.

4. HPM rooms: Exhaust ventilation for HPM rooms shall comply with Section 5004.3.1 and the *building code*.

5. Gas cabinets: Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets shall comply with Section 5003.8.6.2. The gas cabinet ventilation system is allowed to connect to a workstation ventilation system. Exhaust ventilation for gas cabinets containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Chapter 60.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

6. Exhausted enclosures: Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures shall comply with Section 5003.8.5.2. Exhaust ventilation for exhausted enclosures containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Chapter 60.

7. Gas rooms: Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms shall comply with Section 5003.8.4.2. Exhaust ventilation for gas rooms containing highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Chapter 60.

8. Cabinets containing pyrophoric liquids or Class 3 water-reactive liquids: Exhaust ventilation for cabinets in fabrication areas containing pyrophoric liquids or Class 3 water-reactive liquids shall be as required in Section 2705.2.3.4.

2703.14.2 Penetrations. Exhaust ducts penetrating fire barriers constructed in accordance with Section 707 of the *building code* or horizontal assemblies constructed in accordance with Section 711 of the *building code* shall be contained in a shaft of equivalent fire-resistance-rated construction. Exhaust ducts shall not penetrate fire walls. Fire dampers shall not be installed in exhaust ducts.

2703.14.3 Treatment systems. Treatment systems for highly toxic and toxic gases shall comply with Chapter 60.

2703.15 Emergency power system. An emergency power system shall be provided in Group H-5 occupancies in accordance with Section 1203. The emergency power system shall supply power automatically to the electrical systems specified in Section 2703.15.1 when the normal supply system is interrupted.

2703.15.1 Required electrical systems. Emergency power shall be provided for electrically operated equipment and connected control circuits for the following systems:

1. HPM exhaust ventilation systems.

2. HPM gas cabinet ventilation systems.

3. HPM exhausted enclosure ventilation systems.

4. HPM gas room ventilation systems.

5. HPM gas detection systems.

6. Emergency alarm systems.

7. Manual fire alarm systems.

8. Automatic sprinkler system monitoring and alarm systems.

9. Automatic alarm and detection systems for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids required in Section 2705.2.3.4.

10. Flow alarm switches for pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids cabinet exhaust ventilation systems required in Section 2705.2.3.4.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

11. Electrically operated systems required elsewhere in this code or in the *building code* applicable to the use, storage or handling of HPM.

2703.15.2 Exhaust ventilation systems. Exhaust ventilation systems are allowed to be designed to operate at not less than one-half the normal fan speed on the emergency power system where it is demonstrated that the level of exhaust will maintain a safe atmosphere.

2703.16 Sub-atmospheric pressure gas systems. Sub-atmospheric pressure gas systems (SAGS) shall be in accordance with NFPA 318.

Section 2704 Storage

2704.1 General. Storage of hazardous materials shall comply with Section 2703 and this section and other applicable provisions of this code.

2704.2 Fabrication areas. Hazardous materials storage and the maximum quantities of hazardous materials in use and storage allowed in fabrication areas shall be in accordance with Sections 2704.2.1 through 2704.2.2.1.

2704.2.1 Location of HPM storage in fabrication areas. Storage of HPM in fabrication areas shall be within approved or listed storage cabinets, gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures or within a workstation as follows:

1. Flammable and combustible liquid storage cabinets shall comply with Section 5704.3.2.
2. Hazardous materials storage cabinets shall comply with Section 5003.8.7.
3. Gas cabinets shall comply with Section 5003.8.6. Gas cabinets for highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Section 6004.1.2.
4. Exhausted enclosures shall comply with Section 5003.8.5. Exhausted enclosures for highly toxic or toxic gases shall also comply with Section 6004.1.3.
5. Workstations shall comply with Section 2705.2.3.

2704.2.2 Maximum aggregate quantities in fabrication areas. The aggregate quantities of hazardous materials stored or used in a single fabrication area shall be limited as specified in this section.

Exception: Fabrication areas containing quantities of hazardous materials not exceeding the maximum allowable quantities per control area established by Sections 5003.1.1, 5704.3.4 and 5704.3.5.

2704.2.2.1 Storage and use in fabrication areas. The maximum quantities of hazardous materials stored or used in a single fabrication area shall not exceed the quantities set forth in Table 2704.2.2.1.

Table 2704.2.2.1
Quantity limits for hazardous materials in a single fabrication area in Group H-5[a]

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Hazard category	Solids (pounds/square foot)	Liquids (gallons/square foot)	Gas (cubic foot @ NTP/square foot)
Physical-hazard materials			
Combustible dust	Note b	Not applicable	Not applicable
Combustible fiber Loose Baled	 Note b Notes b and c	Not applicable	Not applicable
Combustible liquid Class II Class IIIA Class IIIB Combination Class I, II and IIIA	Not applicable	0.01 0.02 Not limited 0.04	Not applicable
Cryogenic gas Flammable Oxidizing	Not applicable	Not applicable	Note d 1.25
Explosives	Note b	Note b	Note b
Flammable gas Gaseous Liquefied	Not applicable	Not applicable	Note d Note d
Flammable liquid Class IA Class IB Class IC Combination Class IA, IB and IC Combination Class I, II and IIIA	Not applicable	0.0025 0.025 0.025 0.025 0.04	Not applicable
Flammable solid	0.001	Not applicable	Not applicable
Organic peroxide Unclassified detonable Class I Class II Class III Class IV Class V	 Note b Note b 0.025 0.1 Not limited Not limited	Not applicable	Not applicable
Oxidizing gas Gaseous Liquefied Combination of gaseous and liquefied	Not applicable	Not applicable	1.25 1.25 1.25
Oxidizer Class 4 Class 3 Class 2 Class 1 Combination Class 1, 2, 3	 Note b 0.003 0.003 0.003 0.003	 Note b 0.03 0.03 0.03 0.03	Not applicable
Pyrophoric materials	0.01	0.00125	Notes d and e
Unstable (reactive) Class 4 Class 3	 Note b 0.025	 Note b 0.0025	 Note b Note b

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Class 2 Class 1	0.1 Not limited	0.01 Not limited	Note b Not limited
Water reactive Class 3 Class 2 Class 1	 0.01[f] 0.25 Not limited	 0.00125 0.025 Not limited	 Not applicable
Health-hazard materials			
Corrosives	Not limited	Not limited	Not limited
Highly toxics	Not limited	Not limited	Note d
Toxics	Not limited	Not limited	Note d

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454kg, 1 pound per square foot = 4.882 kg/m^2, 1 gallon per square foot = 40.7 L/m^2, 1 cubic foot @ NTP/square foot = 0.305 m^3 @ NTP/m^2, 1 cubic foot = 0.02832 m^3.

a. Hazardous materials within piping shall not be included in the calculated quantities.
b. Quantity of hazardous materials in a single fabrication area shall not exceed the maximum allowable quantities per control area in Tables 5003.1.1(1) and 5003.1.1(2).
c. Densely packed baled cotton that complies with the packing requirements of ISO 8115 shall not be included in this material class.
d. The aggregate quantity of flammable, pyrophoric, toxic and highly toxic gases shall not exceed the greater of 0.2 cubic feet at NTP/square foot or 9,000 cubic feet at NTP.
e. The aggregate quantity of pyrophoric gases in the building shall not exceed the amounts set forth in Table 5003.8.2.
f. Quantity of Class 3 water-reactive solids in a single tool shall not exceed 1 pound.

2704.3 Indoor storage outside of fabrication areas. The indoor storage of hazardous materials outside of fabrication areas shall be in accordance with Sections 2704.3.1 through 2704.3.3.

2704.3.1 HPM storage. The indoor storage of HPM in quantities greater than those listed in Sections 5003.1.1 and 5704.3.4 shall be in a room complying with the requirements of the *building code* and this code for a liquid storage room, HPM room or gas room as appropriate for the materials stored.

2704.3.2 Other hazardous materials storage. The indoor storage of other hazardous materials shall comply with Sections 5001, 5003 and 5004 and other applicable provisions of this code.

2704.3.3 Separation of incompatible hazardous materials. Incompatible hazardous materials in storage shall be separated from each other in accordance with Section 5003.9.8.

Section 2705 Use and handling

2705.1 General. The use and handling of hazardous materials shall comply with this section, Section 2703 and other applicable provisions of this code.

2705.2 Fabrication areas. The use of hazardous materials in fabrication areas shall be in accordance with Sections 2705.2.1 through 2705.2.3.4.

2705.2.1 Location of HPM in use in fabrication areas. Hazardous production materials in use in fabrication areas shall be within approved or listed gas cabinets, exhausted enclosures or a workstation.

2705.2.2 Maximum aggregate quantities in fabrication areas. The aggregate quantities of hazardous materials in a single fabrication area shall comply with Section 2704.2.2, and Table

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2704.2.2.1. The quantity of HPM in use at a workstation shall not exceed the quantities listed in Table 2705.2.2.

Table 2705.2.2
Maximum quantities of HPM at a workstation[d]

HPM CLASSIFICATION	STATE	MAXIMUM QUANTITY
Flammable, highly toxic, pyrophoric and toxic combined	Gas	Combined aggregate volume of all cylinders at a workstation shall not exceed an internal cylinder volume of 39.6 gallons or 5.29 cubic feet
Flammable	Liquid	15 gallons[a, b]
	Solid	5 pounds[a, b]
Corrosive	Gas	Combined aggregate volume of all cylinders at a workstation shall not exceed an internal cylinder volume of 39.6 gallons or 5.29 cubic feet
	Liquid	Use-open system: 25 gallons[b] Use-closed system: 150 gallons[b, e]
	Solid	20 pounds[a, b]
Highly toxic	Liquid	15 gallons[a, b]
	Solid	5 pounds[a, b]
Oxidizer	Gas	Combined aggregate volume of all cylinders at a workstation shall not exceed an internal cylinder volume of 39.6 gallons or 5.29 cubic feet
	Liquid	Use-open system: 12 gallons[b] Use-closed system: 60 gallons[b]
	Solid	20 pounds[a, b]
Pyrophoric	Liquid	0.5 gallon[c, f]
	Solid	4.4 pounds[c, f]
Toxic	Liquid	Use-open system: 15 gallons[b] Use-closed system: 60 gallons[b]
	Solid	5 pounds[a, b]
Unstable reactive Class 3	Liquid	0.5 gallon[a, b]
	Solid	5 pounds[a, b]
Water-reactive Class 3	Liquid	0.5 gallon[c, f]
	Solid	See Table 2704.2.2.1

For SI: 1 pound = 0.454 kg, 1 gallon = 3.785 L.

a. Maximum allowable quantities shall be increased 100 percent for closed system operations. Where Note b applies, the increase for both notes shall be allowed.
b. Quantities shall be allowed to be increased 100 percent where workstations are internally protected with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing or suppression system complying with Chapter 9. Where Note a applies, the increase for both notes shall be allowed. Where Note e applies, the maximum increase allowed for both Notes b and e shall not exceed 100 percent.
c. Allowed only in workstations that are internally protected with an approved automatic fire-extinguishing or fire protection system complying with Chapter 9 and compatible with the reactivity of materials in use at the workstation.
d. The quantity limits apply only to materials classified as HPM.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

e. Quantities shall be allowed to be increased 100 percent for nonflammable, noncombustible corrosive liquids where the materials of construction for workstations are listed or approved for use without internal fire extinguishing or suppression system protection. Where Note b applies, the maximum increase allowed for both Notes b and e shall not exceed 100 percent.

f. A maximum quantity of 5.3 gallons of liquids and 44 pounds of total liquids and solids shall be allowed at a workstation where conditions are in accordance with Section 2705.2.3.4.

2705.2.3 Workstations. Workstations in fabrication areas shall be in accordance with Sections 2705.2.3.1 through 2705.2.3.4.

2705.2.3.1 Construction. Workstations in fabrication areas shall be constructed of materials compatible with the materials used and stored at the workstation. The portion of the workstation that serves as a cabinet for HPM gases, Class I flammable liquids or Class II or Class IIIA combustible liquids shall be noncombustible and, if of metal, shall be not less than 0.0478-inch (18 gage) (1.2 mm) steel.

2705.2.3.2 Protection of vessels. Vessels containing hazardous materials located in or connected to a workstation shall be protected as follows:

1. HPM: Vessels containing HPM shall be protected from physical damage and shall not project from the workstation.

2. Hazardous cryogenic fluids, gases and liquids: Hazardous cryogenic fluid, gas and liquid vessels located within a workstation shall be protected from seismic forces in an approved manner in accordance with the *building code*.

3. Compressed gases: Protection for compressed gas vessels shall also comply with Section 5303.5.

4. Cryogenic fluids: Protection for cryogenic fluid vessels shall also comply with Section 5503.5.

2705.2.3.3 Drainage and containment for HPM liquids. Each workstation utilizing HPM liquids shall have all of the following:

1. Drainage piping systems connected to a compatible system for disposition of such liquids.

2. The work surface provided with a slope or other means for directing spilled materials to the containment or drainage system.

3. An approved means of containing or directing spilled or leaked liquids to the drainage system.

2705.2.3.4 Pyrophoric solids, liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids. Pyrophoric liquids and Class 3 water-reactive liquids in containers greater than 0.5-gallon (2 L) but not exceeding 5.3-gallon (20 L) capacity and pyrophoric solids in containers greater than 4.4 pounds (2 kg) but not exceeding 44 pounds (20 kg) shall be allowed at workstations where located inside cabinets and the following conditions are met:

1. Maximum amount per cabinet: The maximum amount per cabinet shall be limited to 5.3 gallons (20 L) of liquids and 44 pounds (20 kg) of total liquids and solids.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2. Cabinet construction: Cabinets shall be constructed in accordance with the following:

2.1 Cabinets shall be constructed of not less than 0.097-inch (2.5 mm) (12 gage) steel.

2.2 Cabinets shall be permitted to have self-closing limited access ports or noncombustible windows that provide access to equipment controls.

2.3 Cabinets shall be provided with self- or manual-closing doors. Manual-closing doors shall be equipped with a door switch that will initiate local audible and visual alarms when the door is in the open position.

3 Cabinet exhaust ventilation system: An exhaust ventilation system shall be provided for cabinets and shall comply with the following:

3.1 The system shall be designed to operate at a negative pressure in relation to the surrounding area.

3.2 The system shall be equipped with monitoring equipment to ensure that required exhaust flow or static pressure is provided.

3.3 Low-flow or static pressure conditions shall send an alarm to the on-site emergency control station. The alarm shall be both visual and audible.

4 Cabinet spill containment: Spill containment shall be provided in each cabinet, with the spill containment capable of holding the contents of the aggregate amount of liquids in containers in each cabinet.

5 Valves: Valves in supply piping between the product containers in the cabinet and the workstation served by the containers shall fail in the closed position upon power failure, loss of exhaust ventilation and upon actuation of the fire control system.

6 Fire detection system: Each cabinet shall be equipped with an automatic fire detection system complying with the following conditions:

6.1 Automatic detection system: UV/IR, high-sensitivity smoke detection (HSSD) or other approved detection systems shall be provided inside each cabinet.

6.2 Automatic shutoff: Activation of the detection system shall automatically close the shutoff valves at the source on the liquid supply.

6.3 Alarms and signals: Activation of the detection system shall initiate a local alarm within the fabrication area and transmit a signal to the emergency control station. The alarms and signals shall be both visual and audible.

2705.3 Transportation and handling. The transportation and handling of hazardous materials shall comply with Sections 2705.3.1 through 2705.3.4.1 and other applicable provisions of this code.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2705.3.1 Corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps. Corridors and enclosures for exit stairways and ramps in new buildings or serving new fabrication areas shall not contain HPM, except as permitted in corridors by Section 415.11.7.4 of the *building code* and Section 2705.3.2 of this code.

2705.3.2 Transport in corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps. Transport in corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps shall be in accordance with Sections 2705.3.2.1 through 2705.3.3.

2705.3.2.1 Fabrication area alterations. Where existing fabrication areas are altered or modified in existing buildings, HPM is allowed to be transported in existing corridors where such corridors comply with Section 5003.10 of this code and Section 415.11.2 of the *building code*.

2705.3.2.2 HPM transport in corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps. Nonproduction HPM is allowed to be transported in corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps where utilized for maintenance, lab work and testing when the transportation is in accordance with Section 5003.10.

2705.3.3 Service corridors. Where a new fabrication area is constructed, a service corridor shall be provided where it is necessary to transport HPM from a liquid storage room, HPM room, gas room or from the outside of a building to the perimeter wall of a fabrication area. Service corridors shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *building code*.

2705.3.4 Carts and trucks. Carts and trucks used to transport HPM in corridors and enclosures for stairways and ramps shall comply with Section 5003.10.3.

2705.3.4.1 Identification. Carts and trucks shall be marked to indicate the contents.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

1301:7-7-28 Lumber yards and agro-industrial, solid biomass and woodworking facilities.

Section 2801 General

2801.1 Scope. The storage, manufacturing and processing of solid biomass feedstock, timber, lumber, plywood, veneers and agro-industrial byproducts shall be in accordance with this chapter.

2801.2 Permit. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

Section 2802 Definitions

2802.1 Definitions. The following terms are defined in Chapter 2.

Agro-industrial.

Biomass.

Cold deck.

Fines.

Hogged materials.

Plywood and veneer mills.

Raw product.

Solid biofuel.

Solid biomass feedstock.

Static piles.

Timber and lumber production facilities.

Section 2803 General requirements

2803.1 Open yards. Open yards required by the *building code* shall be maintained around structures.

2803.2 Dust control. Equipment or machinery located inside buildings that generates or emits combustible dust shall be provided with an approved dust collection and exhaust system installed in accordance with Chapter 22 and the *mechanical code*. Equipment or systems that are used to collect, process or convey combustible dusts shall be provided with an approved explosion control system.

2803.2.1 Explosion venting. Where a dust explosion hazard exists in equipment rooms, buildings or other enclosures, such areas shall be provided with explosion (deflagration) venting or an approved explosion suppression system complying with Section 911.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2803.3 Waste removal. Sawmills, planning mills and other woodworking plants shall be equipped with a waste removal system that will collect and remove sawdust and shavings. Such systems shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 22 and the *mechanical code*.

Exception: Manual waste removal where approved.

2803.3.1 Housekeeping. Provisions shall be made for a systematic and thorough cleaning of the entire plant at sufficient intervals to prevent the accumulations of combustible dust and spilled combustible or flammable liquids.

2803.3.2 Metal scrap. Provision shall be made for separately collecting and disposing of any metal scrap so that such scrap will not enter the wood handling or processing equipment.

2803.4 Electrical equipment. Electrical wiring and equipment shall comply with NFPA 70.

2803.5 Control of ignition sources. Protection from ignition sources shall be provided in accordance with Sections 2803.5.1 through 2803.5.3.

2803.5.1 Cutting and welding. Cutting and welding shall comply with Chapter 35.

2803.5.2 Static electricity. Static electricity shall be prevented from accumulating on machines and equipment subject to static electricity buildup by permanent grounding and bonding wires or other approved means.

2803.5.3 Smoking. Where smoking constitutes a fire hazard, the fire code official is authorized to order the owner or occupant to post approved "No Smoking" signs complying with Section 310. The fire code official is authorized to designate specific locations where smoking is allowed.

2803.6 Fire apparatus access roads. Fire apparatus access roads shall be provided for buildings and facilities in accordance with Section 503.

2803.7 Access plan. Where storage pile configurations could change because of changes in product operations and processing, the access plan shall be submitted for approval where required by the fire code official.

Section 2804 Fire protection

2804.1 General. Fire protection in timber and lumber production mills, plywood and veneer mills and agro-industrial facilities shall comply with Sections 2804.2 through 2804.4.

2804.2 Fire alarms. An approved means for transmitting alarms to the fire department shall be provided in timber and lumber production mills and plywood and veneer mills.

2804.2.1 Manual fire alarms. A manual fire alarm system complying with Section 907.2 shall be installed in areas of timber and lumber production mills and for plywood and veneer mills that contain product dryers.

Exception: Where dryers or other sources of ignition are protected by a supervised automatic sprinkler system complying with Section 903.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2804.3 Portable fire extinguishers or standpipes and hose. Portable fire extinguishers or standpipes and hose supplied from an approved water system shall be provided within a 50-foot (15 240 mm) distance of travel from any machine producing shavings or sawdust. Portable fire extinguishers shall be provided in accordance with Section 906 for extra-high hazards.

2804.4 Automatic sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1.

Section 2805 Plywood, veneer and composite board mills

2805.1 General. Plant operations of plywood, veneer and composite board mills shall comply with Sections 2805.2 and 2805.3.

2805.2 Dryer protection. Dryers shall be protected throughout by an approved, automatic deluge water-spray suppression system complying with Chapter 9. Deluge heads shall be inspected quarterly for pitch buildup. Deluge heads shall be flushed during regular maintenance for functional operation. Manual activation valves shall be located within 75 feet (22 860 mm) of the drying equipment.

2805.3 Thermal oil-heating systems. Facilities that use heat transfer fluids to provide process equipment heat through piped, indirect heating systems shall comply with this code and NFPA 664.

Section 2806 Log storage areas

2806.1 General. Log storage areas shall comply with Sections 2806.2 and 2806.3.

2806.2 Cold decks. Cold decks shall not exceed 500 feet (152.4 m) in length, 300 feet (91 440 mm) in width and 20 feet (6096 mm) in height. Cold decks shall be separated from adjacent cold decks or other exposures by not less than 100 feet (30 480 mm).

> **Exception:** The size of cold decks shall be determined by the fire code official where the decks are protected by special fire protection including, but not limited to, additional fire flow, portable turrets and deluge sets, and hydrant hose houses equipped with approved fire-fighting equipment capable of reaching the entire storage area in accordance with Chapter 9.

2806.3 Pile stability. Log and pole piles shall be stabilized by approved means.

Section 2807 Storage of wood chips and hogged materials associated with timber and lumber production facilities

2807.1 General. The storage of wood chips and hogged materials associated with timber and lumber production facilities shall comply with Sections 2807.2 through 2807.5.

2807.2 Size of piles. Piles shall not exceed 60 feet (18 288 mm) in height, 300 feet (91 440 mm) in width and 500 feet (152 m) in length. Piles shall be separated from adjacent piles or other exposures by approved fire apparatus access roads.

> **Exception:** The fire code official is authorized to allow the pile size to be increased where additional fire protection is provided in accordance with Chapter 9. The increase shall be based on the capabilities of the system installed.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2807.3 Pile fire protection. Automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided in conveyor tunnels and combustible enclosures that pass under a pile. Combustible or enclosed conveyor systems shall be equipped with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

2807.4 Material-handling equipment. Approved material-handling equipment shall be readily available for moving wood chips and hogged material.

2807.5 Emergency plan. The owner or operator shall develop a plan for monitoring, controlling and extinguishing spot fires. The plan shall be submitted to the fire code official for review and approval.

Section 2808 Storage and processing of wood chips, hogged materials, fines, compost, solid biomass feedstock and raw product associated with yard waste, agro-industrial and recycling facilities

2808.1 General. The storage and processing of wood chips, hogged materials, fines, compost, solid biomass feedstock and raw product produced from yard waste, debris and agro-industrial and recycling facilities shall comply with Sections 2808.2 through 2808.10.

2808.2 Storage site. Storage sites shall be level and on solid ground, elevated soil lifts or other all-weather surface. Sites shall be thoroughly cleaned before transferring wood products to the site.

2808.3 Size of piles. Piles shall not exceed 25 feet (7620 mm) in height, 150 feet (45 720 mm) in width and 250 feet (76 200 mm) in length. Stackable products shall not be stacked in excess of 25 feet (7620 mm) in height, 80 feet (24 384 mm) in width and 250 feet (76 200 mm) in length.

2808.3.1 Increase in pile or stack size. Piles or stackable products are permitted to be increased beyond the dimensions in Section 2808.3 provided that a written fire protection plan is approved by the fire code official. The fire protection plan shall include but not be limited to, the following:

1. Contact information for after-hours response by facility personnel.
2. Storage yard areas and material-handling equipment selection, pile design and arrangement shall be based on sound safety and fire protection principles.
3. Fire apparatus access roads around the piles or stacks and access roads to the top of piles, if applicable, shall be established, identified and maintained.
4. The potential for spontaneous heating shall be evaluated and provisions made to control the temperature of the piles. Methods for monitoring the internal temperature of the pile shall be provided.
5. Routine yard inspections shall be conducted by trained personnel.
6. A means for early fire detection and reporting to the *local* fire department shall be provided.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

7. Facilities and equipment needed by the fire department for fire extinguishment shall be provided, including a water supply in compliance with Section 507 and heavy equipment necessary to move material.

8. A de-inventory plan shall be utilized to remove alternating piles or stacked products in a manner to increase the separation distances between the remaining piles or stacks.

9. The increased pile size shall be based on the capabilities of the installed fire protection systems and features.

10. A controlled burn area shall be provided on-site for smoldering or damaged product.

2808.4 Pile separation. Piles or stacked product shall be separated from buildings, property lines and adjacent piles or stacks by a distance of not less than one and one-half times the height of the pile or stack. The distance between rows shall be a minimum of 30 feet (9144 mm). Approved fire apparatus access roads shall be provided within the separation space in accordance with Section 503.

2808.5 Combustible waste. The storage, accumulation and handling of combustible materials and control of vegetation shall comply with Chapter 3.

2808.6 Static pile protection. Static piles shall be monitored by an approved means to measure temperatures within the static piles. Internal pile temperatures shall be monitored and recorded weekly. Such records shall be maintained. An operational plan indicating procedures and schedules for the inspection, monitoring and restricting of excessive internal temperatures in static piles shall be submitted to the fire code official for review and approval.

2808.7 Pile fire protection. Automatic sprinkler protection shall be provided in conveyor tunnels and combustible enclosures that pass under a pile. Combustible conveyor systems and enclosed conveyor systems shall be equipped with an approved automatic sprinkler system.

2808.8 Fire extinguishers. Portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 and with a minimum rating of 4-A:60-B:C shall be provided on all vehicles and equipment operating on piles and at all processing equipment.

2808.9 Material-handling equipment. Approved material-handling equipment shall be available for moving wood chips, hogged material, wood fines and raw product during fire-fighting operations.

2808.10 Emergency plan. The owner or operator shall develop a plan for monitoring, controlling and extinguishing spot fires and submit the plan to the fire code official for review and approval.

Section 2809 Exterior storage of finished lumber products and solid biofuel products

2809.1 General. Exterior storage of finished lumber and solid biofuel products shall comply with Sections 2809.2 through 2809.5.

2809.2 Size of piles. Exterior storage shall be arranged to form stable piles with a maximum height of 20 feet (6096 mm). Piles shall not exceed 150,000 cubic feet (4248 m^3) in volume.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2809.3 Fire apparatus access roads. Fire apparatus access roads in accordance with Section 503 shall be located so that a maximum grid system unit of 50 feet by 150 feet (15 240 mm by 45 720 mm) is established.

2809.4 Security. Permanent storage areas shall be surrounded with an approved fence. Fences shall be not less than 6 feet (1829 mm) in height.

Exceptions:

1. Lumber piles inside of buildings and production mills for lumber, plywood and veneer.

2. Solid biofuel piles inside of buildings and agro-industrial processing facilities for solid biomass feedstock.

2809.5 Fire protection. An approved hydrant and hose system or portable fire-extinguishing equipment suitable for the fire hazard involved shall be provided for open storage yards. Hydrant and hose systems shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 24. Portable fire extinguishers complying with Section 906 shall be located so that the distance of travel from the nearest unit does not exceed 75 feet (22 860 mm).

Section 2810 Outdoor storage of pallets at pallet manufacturing and recycling facilities

2810.1 General. The outside storage of wood pallets and wood composite pallets on the same site as a pallet manufacturing or pallet recycling facility shall comply with Sections 2810.2 through 2810.11.

2810.2 Site plan. Each site shall maintain a current site plan. The site plan shall be submitted to the fire code official for approval and contain all of the following:

1. Lot lines.
2. Utilities.
3. Size, location and type of construction of the buildings on the property.
4. Presence of the fire protection systems.
5. Water supply sources for fire-fighting purposes.
6. Location of hazardous material storage areas.
7. Location of pallet storage.
8. Equipment protected with a dust collection system.
9. Fire apparatus access roads.
10. Designated smoking areas.
11. Location of fire alarm control panels.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2810.3 Fire prevention plan. The owner or owner's authorized representative shall submit a fire prevention plan for review and approval by the fire code official that includes all of the following:

1. Frequency of walk-through inspections to verify compliance with the plan.
2. Hot work permit program in accordance with Chapter 35.
3. Preventative maintenance program for equipment associated with pallet activities.
4. Inspection, testing and maintenance of fire protection systems in accordance with Chapter 9.

2810.4 Fire safety and evacuation plan. The owner or owner's authorized representative shall prepare and train employees in an approved fire safety and evacuation plan in accordance with Chapter 4.

2810.5 Security management plan. The owner or owner's authorized representative shall prepare a security management plan based on a security risk assessment and shall make the plan and assessment available to the fire code official upon request.

2810.6 Clearance to property line. Stacks of pallets shall not be stored within 0.75 times the stack height or 8 feet (2438 mm) of the property line, whichever is greater, or shall comply with Section 2810.11.

2810.7 Clearance to important buildings. Stacks of pallets shall not be stored within 0.75 times the stack height of any important building on site, or shall comply with Section 2810.11.

2810.8 Height. Pallet stacks shall not exceed 20 feet (6096 mm) in height.

2810.9 Fire flow. Fire-flow requirements for the site shall be determined by the fire code official.

2810.10 Portable fire extinguishers. Portable fire extinguishers shall be selected, installed and maintained in accordance with Section 906.

2810.11 Alternative approach. Where approved by the fire code official, pallet stacks are permitted to be located closer to a property line or structure than as required by Sections 2810.6 and 2810.7 where additional fire protection is provided, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. The storage yard areas and materials-handling equipment selection, design, and arrangement are based on an approved risk assessment.
2. Automatic fire detection that transmits an alarm to a supervising station in accordance with NFPA 72.
3. Fire apparatus access roads around all storage areas.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

1301:7-7-29 Manufacture of organic coatings.

Section 2901 General

2901.1 Scope. Organic coating manufacturing processes shall comply with this chapter except that this chapter shall not apply to processes manufacturing nonflammable or water-thinned coatings or to operations applying coating materials.

2901.2 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in *Chapter 1*.

2901.3 Maintenance. Structures and their service equipment shall be maintained in accordance with this code and NFPA 35.

Section 2902 Definition

2902.1 Definition. The following term is defined in Chapter 2.

"Organic coating."

Section 2903 General precautions

2903.1 Building features. Manufacturing of organic coatings shall be done only in buildings that do not have pits or basements.

2903.2 Location. Organic coating manufacturing operations and operations incidental to or connected with organic coating manufacturing shall not be located in buildings having other occupancies.

2903.3 Fire-fighting access. The fire department shall be able to access the organic coating manufacturing operations from not less than one side for the purpose of fire control. Approved aisles shall be maintained for the unobstructed movement of personnel and fire suppression equipment.

2903.4 Fire protection systems. Fire protection systems shall be installed, maintained, periodically inspected and tested in accordance with Chapter 9.

2903.5 Portable fire extinguishers. Not less than one portable fire extinguisher complying with Section 906 for extra hazard shall be provided in organic coating areas.

2903.6 Open flames. Open flames and direct-fired heating devices shall be prohibited in areas where flammable vapor-air mixtures exist.

2903.7 Smoking. Smoking shall be prohibited in accordance with Section 310.

2903.8 Power equipment. Power-operated equipment and industrial trucks shall be of a type approved for the location.

2903.9 Tank maintenance. The cleaning of tanks and vessels that have contained flammable or combustible liquids shall be performed under the supervision of persons knowledgeable of the fire and explosion potential.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2903.9.1 Repairs. Where necessary to make repairs involving hot work, the work shall be authorized by the responsible individual before the work begins.

2903.9.2 Empty containers. Empty flammable or combustible liquid containers shall be removed to a detached, outside location and, if not cleaned on the premises, the empty containers shall be removed from the plant as soon as practical.

2903.10 Drainage. Drainage facilities shall be provided to direct flammable and combustible liquid leakage and fire protection water to an approved location away from the building, any other structure, storage area or adjoining premises.

2903.11 Alarm system. An approved fire alarm system shall be provided in accordance with Section 907.

Section 2904 Electrical equipment and protection

2904.1 Wiring and equipment. Electrical wiring and equipment shall comply with this chapter and shall be installed in accordance with NFPA 70.

2904.2 Hazardous locations. Where Class I liquids are exposed to the air, the design of equipment and ventilation of structures shall be such as to limit the Class I, Division 1, locations to the following:

1. Piping trenches.
2. The interior of equipment.
3. The immediate vicinity of pumps or equipment locations, such as dispensing stations, open centrifuges, plate and frame filters, opened vacuum filters, change cans and the surfaces of open equipment. The immediate vicinity shall include a zone extending from the vapor liberation point 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally in all directions and vertically from the floor to a level 3 feet (914 mm) above the highest point of vapor liberation.

2904.2.1 Other locations. Locations within the confines of the manufacturing room where Class I liquids are handled shall be Class I, Division 2, except locations indicated in Section 2904.2.

2904.2.2 Ordinary equipment. Ordinary electrical equipment, including switchgear, shall be prohibited except where installed in a room maintained under positive pressure with respect to the hazardous area. The air or other media utilized for pressurization shall be obtained from a source that will not cause any amount or type of flammable vapor to be introduced into the room.

2904.3 Bonding. Equipment including, but not limited to, tanks, machinery and piping shall be bonded and connected to a ground where an ignitable mixture is capable of being present.

2904.3.1 Piping. Electrically isolated sections of metallic piping or equipment shall be grounded or bonded to the other grounded portions of the system.

2904.3.2 Vehicles. Tank vehicles loaded or unloaded through open connections shall be grounded and bonded to the receiving system.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2904.3.3 Containers. Where a flammable mixture is transferred from one portable container to another, a bond shall be provided between the two containers, and one shall be grounded.

2904.4 Ground. Metal framing of buildings shall be grounded with resistance of not more than 5 ohms.

Section 2905 Process structures

2905.1 Design. Process structures shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the *building code*.

2905.2 Fire apparatus access. Fire apparatus access complying with Section 503 shall be provided for the purpose of fire control to not less than one side of organic coating manufacturing operations.

2905.3 Drainage. Drainage facilities shall be provided in accordance with Section 2903.10 where topographical conditions are such that flammable and combustible liquids are capable of flowing from the organic coating manufacturing operation so as to constitute a fire hazard to other premises.

2905.4 Explosion control. Explosion control shall be provided in areas subject to potential deflagration hazards as indicated in NFPA 35. Explosion control shall be provided in accordance with Section 911.

2905.5 Ventilation. Enclosed structures in which Class I liquids are processed or handled shall be ventilated at a rate of not less than 1 cubic foot per minute per square foot [0.00508 $m^3/(s \times m^2)$] of solid floor area. Ventilation shall be accomplished by exhaust fans that take suction at floor levels and discharge to a safe location outside the structure. Noncontaminated intake air shall be introduced in such a manner that all portions of solid floor areas are provided with continuous uniformly distributed air movement.

2905.6 Heating. Heating provided in hazardous areas shall be by indirect means. Ignition sources such as open flames or electrical heating elements, except as provided for in Section 2904, shall not be permitted within the structure.

Section 2906 Process mills and kettles

2906.1 Mills. Mills, operating with close clearances, which process flammable and heat-sensitive materials, such as nitrocellulose, shall be located in a detached building or in a noncombustible structure without other occupancies. The amount of nitrocellulose or other flammable material brought into the area shall not be more than the amount required for a batch.

2906.2 Mixers. Mixers shall be of the enclosed type or, where of the open type, shall be provided with properly fitted covers. Where flow is by gravity, a shutoff valve shall be installed as close as practical to the mixer, and a control valve shall be provided near the end of the fill pipe.

2906.3 Open kettles. Open kettles shall be located in an outside area provided with a protective roof; in a separate structure of noncombustible construction; or separated from other areas by a noncombustible wall having a fire-resistance rating of not less than 2 hours.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

2906.4 Closed kettles. Contact-heated kettles containing solvents shall be equipped with safety devices that, in case of a fire, will turn off the process heat, turn on the cooling medium and inject inert gas into the kettle.

2906.4.1 Vaporizer location. The vaporizer section of heat-transfer systems that heat closed kettles containing solvents shall be remotely located.

2906.5 Kettle controls. The kettle and thin-down tank shall be instrumented, controlled and interlocked so that any failure of the controls will result in a safe condition. The kettle shall be provided with a pressure-rupture disc in addition to the primary vent. The vent piping from the rupture disc shall be of minimum length and shall discharge to an approved location. The thin-down tank shall be adequately vented. Thinning operations shall be provided with an adequate vapor removal system.

Section 2907 Process piping

2907.1 Design. Piping, valves and fittings shall be designed for the working pressures and structural stresses to which the piping, valves and fittings will be subjected, and shall be of steel or other material approved for the service intended.

2907.2 Valves. Valves shall be of an indicating type. Terminal valves on remote pumping systems shall be of the dead-man type, shutting off both the pump and the flow of solvent.

2907.3 Support. Piping systems shall be supported adequately and protected against physical damage. Piping shall be pitched to avoid unintentional trapping of liquids, or approved drains shall be provided.

2907.4 Connectors. Approved flexible connectors shall be installed where vibration exists or frequent movement is necessary. Hose at dispensing stations shall be of an approved type.

2907.5 Tests. Before being placed in service, all piping shall be free of leaks when tested for not less than 30 minutes at not less than 1.5 times the working pressure or not less than 5 pounds per square inch gauge (psig) (35 kPa) at the highest point in the system.

Section 2908 Raw materials in process areas

2908.1 Nitrocellulose quantity. The amount of nitrocellulose brought into the operating area shall not exceed the amount required for a work shift. Nitrocellulose spillage shall be promptly swept up and disposed of properly.

2908.2 Organic peroxides quantity. Organic peroxides brought into the operating area shall be in the original shipping container. When in the operating area, the organic peroxide shall not be placed in locations exposed to ignition sources, heat or mechanical shocks.

Section 2909 Raw materials and finished products

2909.1 General. The storage, handling and use of flammable and combustible liquids in process areas shall be in accordance with Chapter 57.

2909.2 Tank storage. Tank storage for flammable and combustible liquids located inside of structures shall be limited to storage areas at or above grade that are separated from the

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.

processing area in accordance with the *building code*. Processing equipment containing flammable and combustible liquids and storage in quantities essential to the continuity of the operations shall not be prohibited in the processing area.

2909.3 Tank vehicle. Tank car and tank vehicle loading and unloading stations for Class I liquids shall be separated from the processing area, other plant structures, nearest lot line of property that can be built on or public thoroughfare by a minimum clear distance of 25 feet (7620 mm).

2909.3.1 Loading. Loading and unloading structures and platforms for flammable and combustible liquids shall be designed and installed in accordance with Chapter 57.

2909.3.2 Safety. Tank cars for flammable liquids shall be unloaded such that the safety to persons and property is ensured. Tank vehicles for flammable and combustible liquids shall be loaded and unloaded in accordance with Chapter 57.

2909.4 Nitrocellulose storage. Nitrocellulose storage shall be located on a detached pad or in a separate structure or a room enclosed in accordance with the *building code*. The nitrocellulose storage area shall not be utilized for any other purpose. Electrical wiring and equipment installed in storage areas adjacent to process areas shall comply with Section 2904.2.

2909.4.1 Containers. Nitrocellulose shall be stored in closed containers. Barrels shall be stored on end and not more than two tiers high. Barrels or other containers of nitrocellulose shall not be opened in the main storage structure but at the point of use or other location intended for that purpose.

2909.4.2 Spills. Spilled nitrocellulose shall be promptly wetted with water and disposed of by use or burning in the open at an approved detached location.

2909.5 Organic peroxide storage. The storage of organic peroxides shall be in accordance with Chapter 62.

2909.5.1 Size. The size of the package containing organic peroxide shall be selected so that, as nearly as practical, full packages are utilized at one time. Spilled peroxide shall be promptly cleaned up and disposed of as specified by the supplier.

2909.6 Finished products. Finished products that are flammable or combustible liquids shall be stored outside of structures, in a separate structure, or in a room separated from the processing area in accordance with the *building code*. The storage of finished products shall be in tanks or closed containers in accordance with Chapter 57.

Copyright Claim Information

The Ohio Fire Code ("OFC") designates and incorporates substantial portions of the ICC INTERNATIONAL FIRE CODE/2021, a copyrighted work owned by the International Code Council. The International Code Council, Inc., Falls Church, Virginia ("ICC") asserts a copyright in those portions of the OFC based upon the International Fire Code/2021. The ICC asserts that no part of the International Fire Code/2021, as an independent document, may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, including, without limitation, electronic, optical, or mechanical means (by way of example, and not limitation, photocopying, or recording by or in an information storage and retrieval system) without its advance written permission. For information on permission to copy material from the IFC exceeding fair use, please contact: International Code Council, Attn: ICC General Counsel, Birmingham Regional Office, 900 Montclair Road, Birmingham, AL 35213-1206.

Note: for copyright claim information, please see the notice on the last page of this rule.